## PROBLEM DRINKING :

## A CONSTRUCT AND ITS MEASUREMENT

A thesis presented to the

Department of Psychology
University of Canterbury

In fulfilment of the requirements for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

## by

Geoffrey Ashton Elvy
Christchurch, New Zealand 1985

## THESIS

## ABSTRACT


#### Abstract

A problem drinking screening test for general hospital patientswas developed in five experiments as a measure of the construct of problem drinking. In Experiment I, test questions were selected from a group of 59 psychological and medical items on the basis of responses from 1613 hospital patients. The resulting Problem Drinking Screening Test (PDST) has a 23 item self-report section and an optional physician's section of four items. Experiments II to $V$ are concerned with the validity and reliability of the PDST.


#### Abstract

Viewing problem drinking as a construct is justified theoretically, and its relationship to alcoholism, to locus of control, to labelling theory and to idiographic and nomethetic measurement is given. A method for measuring the construct is examined from the perspective of George Kellys 1955 Personal Construct Theory, and a mathematical explanation is presented.


The experiments are introduced by a comprehensive review of the available problem drinking instruments. This review is divided into psychological measures, biomedical measures, combined psychological and biomedical measures, and others. Finally, a brief review is provided of the statistical considerations in developing a test.

## CONTENTS

Page
Chapter 1. INTRODUCTION ..... 1
Chapter 2. THE CONCEPTUALISATION AND DEFINITION OF ALCOHOLISM : AN OVERVIEW ..... 6
2.1 Introduction ..... 6
2.2 Problem Drinking and Alcoholism ..... 10
2.3 The Need for Further Theory on Problem Drinking ..... 14
Chapter 3. PROBLEM DRINKING AS A CONSTRUCT ..... 17
3.1 Introduction ..... 17
3.2 Psychological Measurement and Theory ..... 19
3.3 Development of the Problem Drinking Construct ..... 20
3.4 The Construct, Idiographic and Nomethetic Measurement ..... 38
3.5 Relationship of the Construct to Locus of Control ..... 43
3.6 Alcohol Dependence and Non-Dependence and the Problem Drinking Construct ..... 51
3.7 Summary ..... 56
Chapter 4. PROBLEM DRINKING MEASURES :
A REVIEW ..... 60
4.1 Introduction ..... 60
4.2 Psychological Measures ..... 60
4.3 Biomedical Measures ..... 84
4.4 Combined Psychological and Biomedical Measures ..... 92
4.5 Other Measures ..... 96
4.6 Summary and Conclusions ..... 99

## Contents, ctd.

PageChapter 5. THE DEVELOPMENT OF A TEST TO MEASURE THE CONSTRUCT OF PROBLEM DRINKING ..... 103
5.1 Introduction ..... 103
5.2 Statistical Considerations of Test Development ..... 104
5.3 Nature of the Test ..... 114
Chapter 6. EXPERIMENT I: The Selection of Problem Drinking Test Items ..... 116
6.1 Introduction ..... 116
6.2 Method ..... 118
6.3 Results ..... 133
6.4 Discussion ..... 174
Chapter 7. EXPERIMENT II: Test Construct Validity ..... 177
7.1 Introduction ..... 177
7.2 Method ..... 178
7.3 Results ..... 181
7.4 Discussion ..... 182
Chapter 8. EXPERIMENT III: Test Cross Validity ..... 184
8.1 Introduction ..... 184
8.2 Method ..... 184
8.3 Results ..... 187
8.4 Discussion ..... 187
Chapter 9. EXPERIMENT IV: Test Internal Consistency ..... 189
9.1 Introduction ..... 189
9.2 Method ..... 189
9.3 Results ..... 190
9.4 Discussion ..... 190

## Contents, ctd.

Page
Chapter 10. EXPERIMENT V: Test-Retest Reliability ..... 191
10.1 Introduction ..... 191
10.2 Method ..... 193
10.3 Results ..... 195
10.4 Discussion ..... 195
Chapter 11. DISCUSSION AND CONCLUSIONS ..... 197
Appendix A Labelling Theory, Self-Efficacy and the Problem Drinking Construct ..... 203
Appendix B A Mathematical Expression for the Problem Drinking Construct ..... 208
Appendix C Questionnaires, SPSS Source Program and Raw Data for Experiments I and IV ..... 240
Appendix D Calculation of Labour Needed for Experiment I ..... 271
Appendix E Tables 1 to 8 for Experiments I, II and III ..... 273
Appendix F The Problem Drinking ScreeningTest (PDST) : A Measure for the Construct of Problem Drinking ..... 281
Appendix G Questions, SPSS Source Program and Raw Data for Experiment II ..... 283
Appendix H Questions, SPSS Source Program and Raw Data for Experiment III ..... 287
Appendix I Questions, SPSS Source Program and Raw Data for Experiment $V$ ..... 299
Bibliography ..... 302

|  |  | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Table 1 | Trials, Incompletes and Refusals for Experiment 1 | 131 |
| Table 2 | Structure of Phases in Experiment 1 -00.0.0.0. | 132 |
| Table 3 | Tests of Phase Comparability for <br> Experiment | 134 |
| Table 4 | Distribution of Self-Reported Quantity-Frequency <br> Measures | 137 |
| Table 5 | Prevalence Positive, Sensitivity, Non-Specificity, and Likelihood Ratios for Trial Self-Report Questions $\qquad$ | 138 |
| Table 6 | Prevalence, Sensitivity, Non-Specificity and <br> Likelihood Ratios for Elevated Liver <br> Function Tests | 139 |
| Table 7 | Prevalence, Sensitivity, Non-Specificity and <br> Likelihood Ratios for Elevated Medical <br> Examination Tests | 140 |
| Table 8 | Stepwise Regression Analysis of Selected Items <br> With Problem and Non-Problem Drinking <br> Dependent | 145 |
| Table 9 | Stepwise Regression of Selected Physician's <br> Items for 214 Problem and Non-Problem <br> Drinkers | 146 |
| Table 10 | Raw Data on the Responses of Six Raters on the Internal-External Dimensions of the PDST Self-Report Questions $\qquad$ | 152 |
| Table 11 | Percentage of Inter-Rater Agreement on the <br> Number of Self-Report PDST Internal- <br> External Questions | 153 |
| Table 12 | Age and Sex Characteristics for Problem <br> Drinkers and Controls | 155 |
| Table 13 | Consumption Data for Problem Drinkers <br> and Controls $\qquad$ | 156 |
| Table 14 | Age Factors in Selected Physician's Items for Problem Drinkers and Controls | 157 |
| Table 15 | PDST Self-Report Score Distributions for <br> Trial Weightings | 158 |


|  |  | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Table 16 | Cut-off Score Effects of PDST Self-Report <br> Score Distribution for Different Item <br> Weightings $\qquad$ | 159 |
| Table 17 | Linear Regression for 358 Problem and Control Drinkers to Determine PDST Self-Report Cut-Off Score $\qquad$ | 160 |
| Table 18 | PDST Self-Report Distribution in Relation to Short MAST Scores $\qquad$ | 161 |
| Table 19 | PDST Physician's Score Distribution for Trial <br> Weightings $\qquad$ | 162 |
| Table 20 | PDST Score Distribution (Physician's Plus SelfReport) for 214 Problem Drinkers and Controls $\qquad$ | 163 |
| Table 21 | Principal Factor Matrix for PDST Questions | 164 |
| Table 22 | Self-Report PDST and MAST Score Distributions for 71 Alcohol Dependent Patients $\qquad$ | 179 |
| Table 23 | Relation Between PDST Self-Report and MAST <br> Score Distributions $\qquad$ | 180 |
| Table 24 | Self-Report PDST Score Distribution for 165 <br> Alcohol Dependent Patients $\qquad$ | 186 |
| Table 25 | Test-Retest Correlation Coefficients for PDST Self-Report $\qquad$ | 194 |

## List of Figures

Page
Figure 1 The Construct of 'Non-Problem vs Problem' ..... 21
Figure 2 The Relationship Between Subconstructs, Poles and Elements ..... 21
Figure 3 Three Possible Subconstruct Arrangements ..... 25
Figure 4 Near Normal Drinking Incorporating the Episodic Subconstruct ..... 28
Figure 5 Near Hazardous Drinking Incorporating the Episodic Subconstruct ..... 28
Figure 6 Internal and External Dimensions of Hazardous Drinking ..... 31
Figure 7 Possible Values of External and Internal Problem Drinking Subconstruct Scales ..... 35
Figure 8 Relationship of Dependent to Non-Dependent Problem Drinking ..... 50
Figure 9 Some Levels of Subconstructs in Problem Drinking ..... 52
Figure 10 General Design for Experiment I ..... 117
Figure 11 Screening Out Criteria for Experiment I ..... 117
Figure 12 Screening Out Questions Used in Experiment I ..... 121
Figure 13 Steps and Analyses to Derive Test Items for Experiment I ..... 122

## INTRODUCTION

During December 1980 the Alcohol Research Advisory Committee of the North Canterbury Hospital Board initiated a pilot study on alcoholism among patients in Christchurch Hospital, appointing me principal investigator. One of the aims of the study was to find the prevalence of problem drinking in patients admitted to a general hospital. While it seemed a simple matter of collecting numbers, it soon became apparent that there was no operational definition of problem drinking, regardless of the fact that the alcoholism literature and health professionals frequently referred to terms such as "alcoholic" and "problem drinker" in a way which suggested that they had very clear conceptual and operational meanings. There have been various attempts to clarify the terms, such as Keller and McCormick's Dictionary of Words about Alcohol (1968), Keller's Lexicon of Disablements Related to Alcohol Consumption (1977), and the Horld Health Organisation's International Classification of Diseases (1977). However, these attempts at definition were theoretically useful but clinically inadequate. Confronted with a patient with drinking problems, clinicians seem to use terms which reflect their own phraseology rather than a label derived from a standardised measure.
describing patients suffering from drinking problems, there is still difficulty in deciding which patient is, and which is not a problem drinker. The fact that this problem existed intrigued me and prompted the investigation which forms the basis of this thesis.

This thesis is about the construct 'problem drinking' and its measurement. While Cahalan (1970) is able to give an authoritative and empirically based description of the types of problems which describe problem drinking, the idiosyncratic nature of the phenomenon makes it clear that further theory is needed to explain the relationship between different types of drinking problems.

In Chapter two an explanation is given of the terms 'problem drinking' and 'alcoholism', and their relationship as it applies in this thesis. In Chapter three problem drinking as a construct is discussed from the viewpoint of Kelly's 1955 theory of personal constructs. Chapter four reviews major problem drinking measures and Chapters five to nine are devoted to experiments which empirically develop a test to measure the construct of problem drinking.

Experiment $I$ is the main experiment in which problem drinking test items were empirically selected to fit the construct parameters. This experiment was designed and carried out during 1981 and involved over 1600 patients at Christchurch Hospital. These patients are thanked for their co-operation as are the research assistants (Jan Reid, Michael Rose, Robyn Inman, Linda Garforth, Pam Alexander and Belinda Kennedy) who collected about 200 variables on each
patient. This data collection would not have been possible without the support of the Department of Labour. The research assistants had a difficult job interviewing patients under the constraints of a rigorous research design, while at the same time being sensitive to the needs of patients, nurses and doctors on the wards. To many of the staff and administration of Christchurch Hospital and the North Canterbury Hospital Board this research was a major intrusion, yet they not only allowed it but encouraged it. Special thanks are due to Dr David Andrews, Superintendent of Christchurch Hospital, and to Dr Andrew Hornblow, at that time the Acting Head of the Department of Preventive and Community Medicine. Both provided support, advice, and office accommodation throughout the study. My thanks also to Ruth Helms who typed the questionnaires and who acted as the contact for this experiment.

Thanks also go to the University of Canterbury for administering the salaries of the research assistants, and for the considerable assistance of the staff at the University's Computer Centre for their data preparation and advice on the seemingly never-ending complex computer management matters.

Mr Scott Hells assisted during the summer of 1981-82 with the data management and analysis of Experiment $I$. He is thanked for his contribution and his willingness to learn the complexities of the University's Prime and Burroughs computers.
test was investigated. Experiment II was a study during 1983 of convergent validity, which involved 71 patients being treated for alcoholism, from Sunnyside and Queen Mary Hospitals. Experiment III was a cross-validation study carried out during 1981 on 165 similar patients, again from the same hospitals. Thanks go to the stare and patients of Mahu Villa, Sunnyside, and Queen Mary Hospital for their time and co-operation. My particular thanks to Dr Robert Crawford, Superintendent of Queen Mary Hospital, and to the Charge Nurses and Dr Norman Walker of Mahu Clinic. Karen Baird and Yi Sheng-Yee kindly assisted with the data collection during these two experiments.

Experiments IV and $V$ were concerned with the internal consistency and reliability of the test. Experiment IV involved 537 of the patients from Experiment I; and Experiment $V$ was conducted during 1984 , using 23 patients Erom Mahu Villa, and 44 patients from Queen Mary Hospital. These patients are thanked for their co-operation, and also Valerie Quinn for her assistance with data collection.

My thanks to Christine Johannis For typing the pilot questionnaires and the final questionnaires for Experiments II to $V$ and for attending to the endless administrative details connected with these studies.

My initial interest in Relly $s$ construct theory came Prom attending professor ken Strongman's lectures at the University of Canterbury during 1980. It was his lectures on personality theory which stimulated me to apply construct theory to the concept of problem drinking.

Dr David Robinson from the Mathematics Department at the Uni versity of Canterbury assisted with a mathematical explanation of the construct and his helpis appreciated in showing me iterative and inverse matrix solutions.

The North Canterbury Hospital Board's Alcohol Research Advisory Committee provided guidance and support over the three years during which data were collected. This committee always provided constructive criticism on the organisational aspects of the studies. The committee's membership was: Dr Elisabeth Wells, Dr William Black, Dr Robert Crawford, Dr John O'Hagan, Ms Barbara Smith, Ms Tor Wainwright and until mid-1983, Dr Laurence Malcolm as Chairman.

A major acknowledgement is given to: Dr Elizabeth Wells for her advice on statistical matters relating to the experiments; to Dr William Black who acted as my advisor, mentor and supervisor; and to Christine Johannis who patiently typed the final manuscript

Finally, thanks to my family, Philippa, Chloe and Sabine who endured well beyond reasonable limits, my absence during the writing-up stages.

## OVERYIEH

### 2.1 INTRODUCTION

Without some accepted definitions, such commonly used terms as alcoholism, problem drinking and alcohol dependence have little value. Although agreement among researchers and clinicians is on the increase, there are still many definitions to be found in the alcoholism literature. While most of these are not, strictly speaking, conflicting, neither do they have a high degree of congruence. A prevalence estimate based on one definition usually cannot be compared meaningfully with another estimate using a different frame of reference and another population. As an example, the estimate of more than nine million alcoholics in the United States was adopted by the National Institute of Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism and accepted by the media in 1971. This estimate was based on evidence from epidemiological studies reported by Cahalan and his associates which covered numerous varieties of problem drinking, including but not restricted to alcoholism (Cahalan, 1970; Cahalan and Room, 1972, 1973). In comparison, this would have been a large increase over the official national estimate of five to six million Alcoholies used by the National Advisory Committee on Alcoholism in 1968 (National Advisory Committee on Alcoholism, 1968). While it
is possible that the prevalence did substantially increase from 1968 to 1971 , the change is more likely indicative of how the use of terms can alter perceptions and give false impressions of changes in the nature of a phenomenon. Cahalan (1970) takes the point even further:

> comparing estimates of alcoholics and problem drinkers is a rather futile exercise, because the concepts of alcoholismand problem drinking are not very similar, do not necessarily apply to the same sufferers, and may have quite different implications for etiology and preventive public health measures and treatment. (p3).

The confusion and disagreement over the use and meaning of alcoholism terms are best understood from a historical perspective.

In 1946 Jellinek published a paper on the phases of alcoholism that was based on the responses of 90 white male members of Alcoholics Anonymous who happened to respond to a questionnaire prepared by some of their members. Although Jellinek pointed out that the sample was biased and the questions scientifically imperfect, Jellinek's resulting theory (Jellinek, 1952) had a significant impact. In 1960 Jellinek devised a system of alcohol abuse: alpha (no physical dependence, psychological dependence and symptoms), beta (medical symptoms but no physical dependence), gamma (symptoms and physical dependence), delta (physical dependence but $r e w$ symptoms), and epsilon (binge dinking). In this system Jellinek was clearly differentiating between non-addictive alcoholism (alpha and beta) and addictive alcoholism. It provided a neat, sequential, life history of alcoholism and soon became the basis for studies on the drinking history of long-term alcoholics, dominating both assumptions and research designs well into the 1960 s , and


#### Abstract

remnants still exist today. As early as 1953, however, straus and Bacon labelled college students who were repeatedly getting into difficulty because of drinking, as "problem drinkers", because they did not fit the prevailing disease model of alcoholism. Bacon (1973) commented that while the traditional model has been enormously productive in the past, it is now "emerging as the great new cop-out for avoiding effective response to this problem of alcoholism. " (p.26).


#### Abstract

Based on the notion that alcoholism is by nature a progressive disease (Jellinek, 1952), it has usually been assumed that minor drinking problems are probably indicative of impending alcoholism or Jellinek's "pre-alcoholic" phase. However, Pattison, Sobell and Sobell (1977) cite convincing evidence that for the great many individuals, and perhaps even the majority, the distinct progressive nature formulated by Jellimek and others is not accurate, and orten unnecessary. Edwards (1974) concluded that there is little gain from dividing alcoholism behaviour into discrete and discontinuous groups, and that viewing such behaviour as a continuity of multidimensional variables producing different syndromes is considerably more plausible. This view has been supported by others (e.g. Pattison et al., 1977; Edwards and Gross, 1976; Hodgson, 1980; Chick, 1980; Skinner and Allen, 1982; Chick and Dufey, 1979).


The shift from the disease model of alcoholism to other theories attempting to explain the phenomena has generated further terms to add to the growing repertoire for the layman and professional. Several attempts have been made to standardise terminology. The National Council on Alcoholism
(1972) criteria are important for emphasising both biomedical and psychosocial factors related to excessive drinking.

However, these criteria have been criticised because they lead to a unitary diagnosis (Pattison, 1981), and considerable redundancy among the criteria is evident (Ringer, Kufner, Antons and Feuerlein, 1977). The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-III) of the American Psychiatric Association (1980) recognises two disorders: alcohol abuse and alcohol dependence, where the latter condition is evident either by alcohol tolerance or withdrawal. Previously, a Horld Health Organisation (WHO) task force distinguished between a core dependence syndrome and disabilities which either result from or are related to excessive drinking (International Classification of Diseases, revision 9, WHO, 1977). However, the alcohol dependence syndrome has not escaped criticism (Shaw, 1980) and Edwards, Arif andHodgson, (1982) have attempted to define terms such as drug abuse, drug misuse, neuroadaptive state, dependence, and drug related disability, which are important in the syndrome.

Referring to the problems of derinition researchers and clinicans are confronted with in the alcohol field, Bacon (1975) notes that:

The participants seemed to be talking about different things under the same label and talking about the same things under different labels; they seemed to have brought different languages, methodologies and philosophies to bear upon whatever the label might be (p.59).

Christie and Bruun (1969) have noted the emotionality which pervades the alcoholism field in its definitions as well as ideas; and the inadequacy and vagueness of the definitions
apply to words of fundamental importance, such as dependence, habituation and addiction. hhile adding their own contribution to the chaotic field, these authors suggest a reason for the survival of inconsistent and imprecise terminology: the terminology is socially functional.

However, they argue for the removal of social functionality to achieve intellectual clarity. Reller (1977) states:

It is a comforting thought that the continuing terminological chaos in the alcohol problems field may be symptomatic of a creative stage. For surely this field is still in its budding stage of conceptualisation. (p.24).

Reller also notes that not even the combined efforts of the World Health Organisation and the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism can dissuade people from adopting Humpty Dumpty's attitude: "When I use a word it means just what $I$ choose it to mean."

Nevertheless, it is impossible to discuss alcoholism without adopting some labels, however inadequate they may be. The following discussion defines problem drinking as it is used in this thesis, and describes its relationship to alcoholism.

## 2. 2 PROBLEM DRINKING AND ALCOHOLISM

It is difficult to determine when the term problem drinking first appears in the literature. Undoubtedly it had common usage prior to Plaut's (1967) formal definition as "...a repetitive use of beverage alcohol causing physical, psychological, or social harm to the drinker to others." (pp37-38).

Cahalan (1970) points out that one of the difeiculties of this definition is in establishing causality in relation to problems, and that it is very hard to determine whether a maladjustment in interpersonal relations stemmed from someone's excessive drinking, or whether the drinking was a reaction to an intolerable situation. Cahalan suggests that the terms "problems associated with the use of alcohol" or "problem-related drinking" are precise, emphasizing that the focus is on the problems associated with drinking of certain kinds under certain circumstances, rather than implying that drinking per se necessarily constitutes the problem. Cahalan curther adds that the terms problem drinking and drinking problems can be used as a form of short hand, while their meaning should be clear. Cahalan gives good reasons for adopting this system:

First, any labels need to be free of adverse side effects, such as serving as barriers to thinking on the part of clinicians and the general public. Also, the term problem drinking should encourage research and debate about the etiology of alcohol abuse, since the emphasis is on the behaviour rather than on the person, permitting inquiry into whether there may be many different types of drinking problems and problems drinkers.

Provided the label problem drinking can always be accompanied by a statement of the kind of problem, then it is much to be preferred to that of alcoholism. Again Cahalan gives good reasons for this: One is that specifying the kind of problem encourages the investigations of actual or potential problems

```
in which alcohol is involved. Another is that problem
drinking does not have the emotional connotations of
alcoholism, with alcoholism being fixed as the property of
the medical profession or Alcoholics Anonymous. All too
frequently alcoholism suggests a rock bottom condition which
does not allow for solving problems related to excessive
drinking at an early stage. Finally, the term problem
drinking has the advantage that a distinction can be made
between the problem and non-problem drinker, whereas
alcoholism implies that alcohol is at the root of the
difficulty, with little emphasis on individual and
environmental factors.
```

For these reasons, problem drinking will be the concept used in this thesis, rather than alcoholism. The next step is to determine which problems give rise to problem drinking.

Cahalan believes that a definition of an alcohol problem should stem from the frequency or repetitiveness of problem behaviour. Bailey (1966) and Knupfer (1967) concur that an operational definition of drinking problems must take into account the type, intensity, and frequency of problems. Cahalan lists eleven broad categories of drinking problems which characterise problem drinking, based on the hypothises of Jellinek (1960), Keller (1962), Plaut (1967) and several studies of drinking problems (Cisin, 1963; Fink, 1965; Knupfer, Fink, Clark and Goffman, 1963 ; Kirsch, Newcomb and Cisin, 1965; Cahalan, Cisin and Crossley, 1969). Four types of problems are concerned with the drinking behaviour itself or with reasons for drinking (frequent intoxication; binge drinking; symptomatic drinking; psychological dependence),
four are connected with interpersonal relations (problems with spouse or relatives; problems with friends or neighbours; job problems; problems with law, police, accidents) and three are miscellaneous problems which cannot conclusively be classipied into prior categories (health; financial problems; belligerence). Further, Cahalan is able to give the criteria for a person to score on each of the eleven categories (pp28-32).

While Cahalan restricts the term problem drinking to these broad categories, it is not difficult to envisage that within each category there will be further alcohol related problems, having their own severity and frequency and all contributing to the broad problem category. For example, a person with job problems may have lost a job because of drinking or because of poor work performance related to drinking, or because of a number of other possibilities.

Because of the large variety of alcohol problems which can describe the problem drinker, this thesis will adopt Keller and McCormick's broad definition of a problem drinker as:

An excessive drinker whose drinking causes private or public harm and who is seen to cause problems for himself or for others. The category includes the alcoholic. Often, a euphemism for alcoholic, used especially in business and industrial programs, or to avoid the implication of a diagnosis. (1968, p. 38)

This definition is by no means perfect, and it begs the question of what constitutes excessive drinking. other attempts at definition have been no better (e.g. plaut, 1967; Knupfer, 1967). However, Matross and Hines (1982) were able to show that there is considerable agreement among the public, researchers and ciinicians on the general content of
the signs of problem drinking. While the content of problem drinking will be covered in the later chapters, there are two other supplementary considerations to Keller and McCormick's definition which this thesis uses. Eirst, "problems" are those behaviours which are perceived as problems by the individual himself or by significant others (such as wife, friends, employers, police or clinician). Second, recognition must be given to the duration and severity of the problem, since this not only indicates whether the problem is current, but can also be used to infer the frequency of behaviour. Both of these considerations will be explored more fully in Chapter three.

Given that the definition of problem drinking includes those who are alcoholic, and that being alcoholic is congruent with being alcohol dependent (Edwards and Gross, 1976), then in this thesis problem drinkers will be divided into two broad categories, those who are dependent (the alcoholics) and those who are non-dependent. Hhere possible the term alcoholic will be avoided because of the same difficulties associated with the term alcoholism. However, when citing literature which refers to alcoholics the term will remain, since it is usually not clear whether the authors mean dependent problem drinkers, or simply problem drinkers.

## 2. 3 THE NEED FOR FURTHER THEORY ON PROBLEM DRTNKING

There are a number of sound reasons for a further theory on problem drinking.

Eirst, with the exception of Jellinek's and Cahalan's preliminary formulations there has never been any formal or salient theoretical framework for the concept of problem drinking. This does not mean that curcent ideas and terms should be replaced by something new. The theory to be proposed here complements these and is intended to suggest how various problem drinking terms may be related. The theory is not concerned with the intrinsic aspects such as etiology, epidemiology or treatment, but arises out or the need for a framework to tentatively describe a process to measure problem drinking.

The second need for such theory is an extension of the first. Successful communication between researchers and treatment professionals can substantially contribute to the ways in which the needs of the patients will be met. If terms are being used ambiguously or interpreted to have a dirferent meaning from that intended, patients are likely to suffer in many ways. Some of these problems have been axamined by Robinson (1976), and it seems probable that some terms are so imprecise that they only act to add to the confusion. Cartwright, Shaw and Sprately, (1975) have gathered information on the way ordinary people handle concepts of abnormal drinking, and it is clear that although there is a widespread token acceptance of alcoholism as a disease, there is confusion about what is meant by problem drinking, which is contrary to the cited evidence of Mulford (1977). It is possible that such inconsistent views stem from the researchers' different understanding of problem drinking, highlighting the need for a common denominator through which discussion can take place.

The third reason is that it would provide a research basis for investigating methods or assessment. To the author's knowledge, there is currently no instrument which claims to measure problem drinking, although various tests (summarised in Chapter Four) designed to detect alcoholics or alcoholism have been used as research tools for problem drinking. (See MacIntosh (1982) for a comprehensive review). This thesis examines the development of a screening test for problem drinking based on viewing problem drinking as a construct.

## CHAPTER THREE

## PROBLEM DRINKING AS A CONSTRUCT

## 3. 1 INTRODUCTION

Worden and Rosellini (1980) point out that alcohol-related problems are much more complicated, blurred and fuzzy than the crystalline purity that professional orthodoxy implies. Yet each individual investigator uses his own mind in subtle and complex ways to interpret these problems. In other words, his cognitive processes, especially those that describe the individual's subjective view, determine for that individual the nature and extent of a particular problem. According to George Kelly (1955), all persons are primarily cognitive: they think, they learn, they interpret and organise the world around them in their minds.

Any theory which is based on a person's subjective view of the world must explain what structures and processes for knowing the world are common to all people, otherwise it is impossible to explain individual variations and differences. For Relly, personal constructs, or categories for the interpretation of events, are the basis of subjective experience. Kelly proposed that the cognitive process consists primarily of the ways in which individuals interpret and classify things. His fundamental postulate is that "A person's processes are psychologically channelised by the ways in which he anticipates events." (p.46); that is, all
individuals develop their own category system which guides perceptions, actions, expectations and resposes. Kelly refers to these categories as personal constructs.

The American Psychological Association's definition of a psychological construct, in their Standards for Educational and Psychological Tests (1974) is:
an idea developed or "constructed" as a work of informed, scientific imagination: that is, it is a theoretical idea developed to explain and to organise some aspects of existing knowledge. (p.29).

This definition differs from Kelly's in that the construct is determined by observors, while Kelly's is an individualised one. Kelly, in fact, explores precisely the meaning of a particular set of constructs, and it is this preciseness which is appealing.

In this chapter, the reasons why problem drinking can be viewed as a construct will be explained, drawing from George Kelly's personal construct theory. His theory was chosen for a number of reasons: First, while personal construct theory is a personality theory, in the writer's view it has direct application to problem drinking. Second, unlike most theorists, Kelly attempts to bridge the gap between theory and research. He suggests a means for identifying personal constructs in the Role Construct Repertory Test (1955, Chapters 5 and 6). While this test is not used here, some of its derivations are. Last, Kelly's theory emphasises the person's own view of the world. Measurement for problem drinking needs to include the individual's own perception of the problem since failing to do this is paramount to removing a person's right to determine his future.

## 3. 2 PSYCHOLOGICAL MEASUREMENT AND THEORY

Distinctions have sometimes been made between the terms "theory" and "models" (e.g. Davidson, D., Suppes, P. and Siegel, S., 1957; Lachman, 1960). For example, a theory can refer to a set of assertions about inter-relationships among processes or constructs presumed to underlie and account for observed phenomena in some domain. On the other hand, a model can be restricted to a separate system of symbolic representation. In this thesis, both theory and model will be used in connection with measurement, and will refer to the elements, properties, and relationships represented in symbolic and mathematical systems that are co-ordinated in experiments with properties of empirical phenomena. The elements of the model are constructs which can be represented by real numbers. The theory explains how to assign numbers to the elements in such a way that the numerical operations and relations are isomorphic to certain specified empirical operations and relations.

Since the theoretical properties are difficult to determine without measurement of some kind, the problem of assigning numbers is somewhat circular and needs to be approached iteratively by successive evaluations and subsequent changes in measurement. However, the application of the measurement techniques described could provide insights into the nature of the properties of problem drinking. In discussing the application of measurement to personality theory, Messick and Ross (1962) point out that
systematic attempts should be made to relate the assumptions and requirements of the model to properties of observed behavioural consistencies. (p.4).


#### Abstract

Once the structural relations of problem drinking can be reflected in an empirical domain, measurement can begin. The choice of the measurement approach will depend upon the modelled relationship between the respondent and test responses. Another consideration in measurement choice is to select measures which serve the goal for which the test was intended, Since the validity of a measure is directly connected to the purpose for that measure (Bavelas, 1978) and if the measure is valid, then the means and the ends of the test match.


The remainder of this chapter is devoted to investigating a theoretical framework from which to measure the construct of problem drinking. The relationship of the construct to locus of control, idiographic and nomethetic measurement and to alcohol dependence is discussed. The involvement of
labelling theory and self-efficacy to the problem drinking construct are also mentioned (Appendix A), and a simple mathematical explanation is presented (Appendix B).

## 3. 3 DEVELOPMENT OF THE PROBLEM DRTNKING CONSTRUCT

In order to understand a construct, it is necessary to understand both what it means and what it does not mean. For example, saying someone is a problem drinker has meaning only in relation to non-problem drinking. All constructs are essentially dichotomous according to kelly (1955) and Bavelas

## FIGURE 1

The Construct of 'Non-problem vs Problem'
non-problem
problem

## FIGURE 2

The Relationship Between Subconstructs,
Poles and Elements



#### Abstract

(1978), However, Kelly continues to say that ".. it is still possible to conceive of graduations, as Landfield (1954) did, along a dimensional line." (p.141).


A construct then, is a bipolar idea which organises some aspects of existing knowledge along a continuum which has end points representing opposite poles. For instance, consider Figure 1 which represents a non-problem versus problem construct. A person may perceive some aspect of behaviour along this dimension in terms of problem, non-problem and combinations of these. A number of comments can be made here:

First, viewing constructs in this way enables the user to predict or construe events. For example, as soon as a person is seen to have a combination of problem and non-problem, then we imply that it may happen again. Acoording to kelly, the very act of construing on a construct makes it impossible not to suggest prediction. This is the usual process of clinical diagnosis. That is, if problem drinking is a construct then it should enable a clear distinction to be made between what it is, and what it is not. Relly argues that constructs are primarily personal, and that the communication of a particular construct may be misleading to the listener. Kelly further says that there is also confusion over the two-ended nature of constructs and the possibility that one person's problem may have quite a different continum stretching away from it than does another person's problem. Another aspect of Kelly's theory, which is eqemplified in problem drinking is that the constructs have
ill-defined word labels. However, kelly believes that the alternatives and meanings derived from the action of construing are
not so vast as to be unmanageable, ... and the skilled clinician may be able to tease out the meanings and linkages ... (p.199)

Second, constructs according to kelly can be formed into an additive type of scale. If, for example, the construct problem versus non-problem drinking is built out of the constructs hazardous versus normal drinking, employed versus unemployed, and married versus single, then a person's representation on the problem versus non-problem drinking is the sum of the representation of each of these bipolar sub-scales. It is suggested here that problem drinking is the pole of a construct incorporating the sum of many representations on subconstruct scales. Also, terms such as drunk, sober, hazardous drinking, arguments, fights, etc. frequently used in this chapter are used only as examples of constructs for the purpose of discussion and are not intended to have precise operational meanings.

It is now necessary to make three definitions: The first tho are from Kelly's (1955) theory, and the third is original.

## Definitions:

1. Elements:
"The things or events which are abstracted by a construct are called elements." (p.137).
2. Pole:
"Each construct involves two poles, one at each end of its dichotomy. The elements associated at each pole are like each other with respect to the construct and are unlike the elements at the other pole." (p.137)
3. Subconstruct:

A construct which subsumes a higher-order construct.

Rather than referring to a construct by the elements at both ends of the poles, such as non-problem versus problem, in the following discussion generally only one element will be named to describe the construct. The opposite element will be assumed; for example, "drunk" will represent drunk versus sober. This method of naming is in line with kelly who says:

Any one of the like elements in the context of one's construct may give the construct its name. (p.138).
"Like elements" defined by Relly are those at one end of a pole.

A consideration in explaining the implicit use of constructs in problem drinking is the availability of validating data. Cronbach and Meehl (1955) describe construct validation as the study of "... predicted relations among observables" (p. 300). However, in order to do this there must be enough theoretical knowledge to know what predictions to make. This problem has been anticipated by Cronbach and Meehl: we will be able to say "what anxiety is" when we
know all of the laws involving it; meanwhile, since we are in the process of discovering these laws, we do not yet know precisely what anxiety is. (p. 294).

The parallel here is that the development of a simple measure for problem drinking is impeded by the lack of detailed and sophisticated knowledge of the theory into which it might rit.

## Proposition:

Problem drinking is a construct which contains a variety of subconstructs, each defined by the idiosyncratic responses of individuals to alcohol consumption.

## Discussion of the proposition

There are many descriptions of which responses do, and which do not make a problem drinker. Elements of problem drinking may or may not include accidents, crime, social
misdemeanours, hazardous drinking, marital stress, poor work performance etc (see Worden and Rosellini, 1980; Cahalan, 1970). It is suggested here that these elements are the poles of bipolar subconstructs of problem drinking, each operating on a continuum. Figure 2 shows diagramatically the relationship between subconstructs, poles and elements.

Take, for example, the construct 'marital stress'. Any person who is married can be represented by combinations of the elements representing the end points of this scale. However, 'marital' is a construct itselr, perhaps being subsumed by a higher-order one such as 'status'. In turn, 'status' can be subsumed by another higher-order construct.

## Three Possible Subconstruct Arrangements



Whenever one construct is subsumed by another, the former, by definition, becomes a subconstruct. Kelly (1955) refers to this process as "symbolism" (p.138). In theory, this process may be extended infinitely. Another example is given in Figure 3. The outer line represents the boundary for the construct 'problem drinking'. The area outside this boundary Kelly terms a "constellatory construct",
which permits its elements to belong to other realms concurrently, but fixes their realm memberships. (p.155).

Each of the elements in Figure 3 represent one pole of a subconstruct. The choice of which pole (e.g. regular drinking or irregular drinking) is purely arbitrary. There are three possible situations in which the subconstructs can be arranged.

The first is when the subconstruct 'lateness' is a subset of ' poor work performance' which itself is a subset of 'problem drinking'. 'Lateness' is an amplification of the element at the end of the poor work performance scale (it would obviously be inappropriate to see lateness as an amplification of the good work performance end of the scale).
'Lateness' itself may have subconstructs. This is the second situation in which, for example, 'fights' is a subconstruct of 'arguments' which is a subconstruct of 'marital stress' which is a subconstruct of 'problem drinking'.

```
In the third situation, 'episodic' and 'regular' are disjoint
subconstructs of 'hazardous drinking'. 'Episodic' and
'regular' may not be an amplification of either pole of the
hazardous drinking scale, but rather an amplification of a
```


## FIGURE 4

Near Normal Drinking Incorporating the Episodic Subconstruct


## FIGURE 5

Near Hazardous Drinking Incorporating the Episodic Construct

combination of both. It is suggested here that the point at which this combination occurs on the scale is idiosyncratic. For example, some people may be episodic and near normal drinkers (Figure 4) while others may not (Figure 5). It is also suggested that 'problem drinking' is the sum or combinations of these elements from subconstruct scales. It would be possible, for example, for a problem drinker to have poor work performance although not be arriving late (Eigure 3), and be a hazardous regular drinker with relative marital harmony although involved in some fights. It would also be possible for a problem drinker to have a completely different combination from the same scales. This idiosynoracy is a possible reason for the difficulty experienced in deriving an operational definition for problem drinking.

So far, the subconstructs of problem drinking have been represented by bipolar unidimensional scales, with individuals responding idiosyncratically on these scales. However, it is necessary to examine more closely the nature of these responses.

## Corollary

Responses on a problem drinking subconstruct scale are governed by internal and external perceptions.

## Discussions of the Corollary:

This corollary is closely allied to the "problem of interpretation" (p.116) in kelly's theory. That is, constructs are primarily personal, and, as mentioned earlies,
are not easily communicated. For example, take 'lateness'. An employee arriving at work one minute past the prescribed hour might consider it not late, but the employer may have very dirferent views. In order to clarify these problems of interpretation, it is proposed to add another two dimensions to the structure of scales.

In measuring the construct of problem drinking it is necessary to account for the confounding nature of idiosyncrasy, Assessing unique, individual responses Alport (1937) calls "idiographic measurement". However, in the context of problem drinking, it would be inappropriate to rely totally on the idiographic responses of only one person. In the previous example the employee's interpretation of lateness was different fromthe employers. There is not necessarily a correct or incorrect interpretation of lateness, but in fairness both interpretations need to be considered. In other words, the response on a scale for problem drinking should be made up from a combination of an internally perceived interpretaton (that of the employee) and an externally perceived interpretation (that of others or the employer). Failure to account for both could result in incongruous situatons. For example, an individual could interpret his drinking as normal while being observed by others to be withdrawing from alcohol dependence, in which case a diagnosis of normal drinking would not be proper.

Thus, two more dimensions of each problem drinking scale are suggested: those of high-internal versus low-internal perceptions and high-external versus low-external perceptions, henceforth referced to as internal and external

## FIGURE 6

Internal and External Dimensions of Hazardous Drinking

## Hazardous Drinking

| high <br> external |  | high high | $\begin{aligned} & \text { internal } \\ & \text { external } \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| low inte | nal | high internal |  |
| lowexte | กal |  |  |



To illustrate how this process works consider the example in Figure 6 which shows how the internal and external perceptions determine a person's representation on the hazardous drinking scale. The corollary proposes that the value on the hazardous drinking scale is a combination or function of internal and external perceptions, or $H$ on the figure. Obviously $H$ can take a variety of perception values from low to high inteanal and external. Stating this differently, deciding whether or not a person is a hazardous
drinker (the value of $H$ ) depends on the perception of the
individual (the internal perception) and the perceptions of others (the external perception). It is likely that this psychological process applies to any problem drinking subconstruct.

In summary, it has been proposed that the idiosyncratic responses to the scales of problem drinking are determined by a combination of representations on internal and external scales. Providing the subconstructs represent the content domain of problem drinking, it should therefore be possible to measure the construct of problem drinking by summing the scale representations of these subconstructs.

## A case history

To illustrate the application of the theory congider the following hypothetical case history:

Jane was a 17 year old student who was admitted to hospital for acute abdominal pain. She had one younger brother and was the daughter of professional working parents. After passing the university bursary examination she moved into a flat with her boyfriend John, a 22 year old unemployed graduate, and intended to go to university the following year. She said she left home because her family was not a happy one, with her parents constantly arguing and Jane frequently being physically abused by her father. She said she did not begin drinking heavily until she was in the seventh form. She would drink spirits usually vodka, in large quantities (half a bottle or more on one occasion) regularly on Friday and Saturday nights with the intention of getting drunk. She said this pattern of drinking had been going on for about a year or more. Jane reported that once she had one drink she had a craving for more and had often drunk alcohol to try to get rid
of morning trembling and nausea. She atttributed the morning nausea to her drinking, felt she would like to drink less, and thought her relationship with John was deteriorating and that he had threatened to leave because of her drinking. All Jane's liver function tests were normal, indicating no liver damage due to alcohol.

The following are examples of some of the subconstructs which can be extracted from the case history:

## Subconstruct

Regular drinker
Heavy drinker
Dependent on alcohol
Craving for more
Drinking to get rid of trembling
Deteriorating relationship
Morning nausea
Would like to drink less
Normal liver function

## Governing Perception

Internal
Internal
External
Internal
Internal
Internal/external
Internal
Internal
External

The governing perceptions listed above are some of those which dominate Jane's representation on each scale. Jane, for example, said that she drank regularly on Friday and Saturday nights. Anything Jane said, unless it was supported or contradicted by the perception of others, would mainly be her own perception of that subconstruct. The perception of others was largely external to Jane unless she supported or contradicted that particular interpretation. Thus, it could be said that Jane was dependent on alcohol, but since the history did not suggest this then the representation would be largely external. Her placement on the deteriorating relationship' scale was both internally and externally

## FIGURE 7

Possible Values of External and Internal Problem Drinking Subconstruct Scales



#### Abstract

perceived - she said it was deteriorating and John said he would leave. If the subconstructs were a representative sample from the content domain of problem drinking, then the sum of Jane's representation on each of the scales would determine her overall score on the problem drinking scale.


#### Abstract

Suppose, for example, each internal and external scale is arbitrarily assigned values ranging from 0 to 1. Suppose also that the result of the combination of these scales had a range from o to 1. This situation is represented in Figure 7 .


The point $H$ is the combination of the external and internal scales, mathematically represented as f(internal, external). The function $f$ is a cognitive process which combines the external and internal scales of a particular subconstruct to give a score $H$. There are, of course, likely to be individual differences in the scores on these scales, the nature of the function $f$ and, therefore, the resulting score H for any subconstruct.

One way of obtaining a total score is to find the additive sum of $H^{\prime} s$ for each subconstruct. In the case of the subconstructs listed for Jane this would mean that the problem drinking score would range in values from 0 to 9 , since there are nine scales each having an $H$ ranging from to 1. However, this simplistic way of summing scores does not allow for any interactive effects between the subconstructs. A rull discussion of a mathematical method Aor representing the construct scale structures is given in

Appendix B. This discussion translates the terms and ideas of the probem drinking construct into matrix equations, giving examples of both general and simple solutions.

In practice, it may be difficult to determine the relative contribution of the internal and external dimensions towards the score for any one scale. Also, it is useful to be able to rate any subconstruct as deriving from largely external or internal perceptions, or from a reasonable balance of both. This determination has application: for example, a problem drinker with a high internally derived score is at least admitting problems and may be more likely to receive help than one who is largely diagnosed through external perceptions. Also, any test which is constructed to measure problem drinking needs a mixture of both externally and internally derived measures. This ensures that the perceptions of others and the perception of the person in question are taken into account before a diagnosis is made. This is particularly important when trying to make an early diagnosis, when more objective physical signs of alcohol dependence are not always available.

To build a number system which makes the summing of scales possible, Kelly suggests binary measures: that is, Kelly argues that because construct scales are bipolar, one end of the scale could be allocated the value 0 and the contrast pole the value 1. Suppose, for example, the subconstruct names in the case history represent the first element of each pair (e.g. regular drinker for the scale regular versus irregular drinker) and that the binary digit 1 represents the
first of each pair and 0 the second. Then a regular, light, non-dependent drinker can be written, as in the binary system, as 001. Extending this to all the scales from 'regular drinker' to 'normal liver function' means that the scale has a possible 9 steps running from 0000 to 1001. Since it has been argued that constructs operate on a continuous bipolar scale, the obvious drawback to this numbering system is that it does not allow for graduations within one scale. For instance, Jane is or is not a regular drinker (only the values 1 or 0). To alleviate this problem, it would be possible to arrange other scales to allow for more graduated representations: however, it will be shown that the binary system is preferable on utilitarian grounds.

If Jane was a problem drinker, she must have had sufficient representation on the problem drinking pole of the problem drinking versus non-problem drinking scale. That is, Jane's scores could run from 0000 to 1001 , and there is some score within this range which determines problem drinking. How much representation is required raises the question of deciding on a cut-off score on the scale: this is investigated in Experiment I.

### 3.4 THE CONSTRUCT, IDIOGRAPHIC AND NOMETHETIC MEASUREMENT

The fact that the construct of problem drinking can be abstracted theoretically does not necessarily mean that there is some characteristic of individuals which can be measured in the context of that construct. A full explanation of the problem drinking construct is made difficult by the lack of understanding of the laws in which it operates. Is the construct common to all individuals and measured in the same way for everyone, or is it unique to each individual to be
assessed differently for each? If the former holds, then nomethetic measurement is appropriate. Alternatively, if the latter holds idiographic measurement should be used (Bavelas, 1978). So Car, all problem drinking instruments have been nomothetic; that is, it is assumed that there is some measurable characteristic which is common to all individuals. $\quad$ if this is not true, then traditional measurement will have failed.

Bem and Allen (1974) discuss some of the oharacteristics of nomethetic measurement and point out three "nomothetic fallacies" (p.142) based on insufficiently acknowledged assumptions underlying nomethetic measurement. These fallacies will now be discussed in the context of the problem drinking construct:

First, there is the assumption of equivalence in the construct items. All the items in questionnaires designed to detect problem drinkers are assumed to be equivalent in the sense of measuring the same thing. Describing oneself as a heavy drinker and also dependent on alcohol are assumed to be in the same class of self-descriptions that are equivalent. While this assumption may be true in the eyes of the investigator, in the eyes of the subject, it may not. If the assumption of the shared equivalence class of items is indeed a fallacy Bem and Allen conclude:

The research will yield the conclusion that a sample of individuals is inconsistent to the degree that their behaviours do not sort into the equivalence class which the investigator imposes by his choice of behaviours and situations to sample. (p. 509).

The problem of deciding which items share the same
equivalence class for a particular construct has been referred to as the "domain definition" by Martuza (1977, p. 255), or the process of deciding which elements belong to the content domain. Martuza also recognises that the process is difeicult:
it must be understood that the domain definition problem has not been completely solved. (p.255)

In problem drinking the equivalence class items are the subconstructs. Naturally, even if all of the equivalence class subconstructs were known, they may be too numerous to measure. The problem is more one of determining which sample of subconstructs share the same equivalence class for problem drinking. If only one construct is being measured using a Pinite number of subconstructs sharing the same equivalence class, the process of determining whether the sample is representative of all the equivalence class items is referred to in traditional test construction as "content validation" (e.g. Martusa, 1977; Anastasi, 1976; Cronbach, 1970).

The second problem with traditional nomethetic measurement that Bem and Allen identify is one of scaling. Such measurement assumes that all items or behaviours are scaled, weighted, and added up in the same way ror all subjects. Returning to the case history, if each of the elements at the scale poles was weighted 0 and 1 , as kelly suggests, and Jane was represented by 1 on the scales for 'regular drinker' and "craving for more', then it is assumed that both of these items have exaotly equal importance. If she scored 1 for the rixst three scales and 0 for the rest, then the binary representation on the problem drinking construct would be 0011. Each addition assumes equal item weighting.

The third problem Bem and Allen discuss is consistency; that is, nomethetic measures assume that different situations evoke equally consistent responses for everyone. Bem and Allen suggest that there may have been an over generalization for some of the temporal consistencies which are present. Mischel's review (1968) has shown that an individual's behaviour is often consistent from one time to another if the situations are similar. Bem and Allen suggest that cross-situational consistency should itself be measured to determine how it affects the relationship between other variables. Consistency has been called a "moderator variable" (Kogan and Hallach, 1964) which Bavelas (1978) says should be treated as a personality trait and therefore requires appropriate validation. Bem and Allen summarise the major nomethetic measurement errors by saying that nomothetic measurement:

```
will yield evidence of cross-situational
consistency only if the individuals in the research
sample agree with the investigator's a priori claim
that the sample behaviours and situations belong in
a common equivalence class and only if the
individuals agree among themselves on how to scale
those behaviours and situations. (1974, p. 510).
```

Idiographic measurement assumes that every individual has a different equivalence class and scaling for every
characteristic. Bavelas feels that this overstates the case:

```
Surely we would be virtually unable to communicate,
or to describe ourselves and other people, if this
were true. We must have some common
phenomenological experiences. (1978, p.147).
```

Bavelas goes on to say that there may be some constructs cor which some people share the same equivalence class. That is, rather than accept the nomethetic/idiographic dichotomy, it may be possible to develop a measure in between, and outines
a possible method based on Lewin's (1935) social and phenomonological theory of personality. That is to identify clearly the group of interest, such as problem drinkers; collect items from the group itself; and to let the group sort and label the items in their own way. However, this has not yet been done formally, although the procedure has been used to study different populations (e.g. Havighurst and Neugarten, 1955; Rice, 1965; Barthol and Bridge, 1968). The majority of attempts to use idiographic assessment has been in the rield of personality research (e.g. Kelly, 1955; Mischel, 1968, 1973; Bavelas, 1978; Bem and Allen, 1974). Because idiographic assessment only permits one to predict some behaviours across some situations, a conflict arises when there is a need for the measures to have fixed parameters. Screening for problem drinking in an unselected population for instance, is not likely to involve a different set of variables for each individual. Bem and Allen's advice is simple:

Separate those individuals who are cross-situationally consistent on the trait dimension and throw the others out ... (1974, p. 512)

In summarising, the decision as to which approach to take in measurement presents a dilemma: if individual differences do exist within the construct of problem drinking then idiographic measurement is appropriate, otherwise nomethetic measurement has application. Perhaps the path, as Bavelas suggests, is somewhere between the two.

## 3. 5 RELATIONSHIP OF THE CONSTRUCT TO LOCUS OF CONTROL

Social learning theory provides an excellent framework for the investigation of issues of personal control and researchers have attempted to use this theory to explain problem drinking. One issue has been to explore Rotter's (1966) Internal-External (I-E) Locus of Control Scale concerning the expectancy of control of reinforcements as they apply to problem drinkers. It is not the intention of the pollowing discussion to provide a review of locus of control - this can be found elsewhere (e.g. Abbott, 1977; Rohsenow and 0 Leary, 1978; Hirrichsen, 1976), but rather to show how locus of control relates to the construct of problem drinking.

It is important to distinguish between locus of control and the internal and external problem drinking scales. Locus of control refers to an individual's expectancies about whether or not he has control over what happens to him. It has been conceptualised by Rotter, Chance and Phares, (1972) as a continuum with one end termed "internal control" defined as:
the perception of positive and/or negative events being a consequence of one's own action and thereby under personal control. (p.499).
and the other end termed "external control":
the perception of positive and/or negative events being unrelated to one's own behaviors in certain situations and therefore being beyond personal control. (p.499)

In the problem drinking construct neither the internal or external scales are necessarily related to control. To use Rotter et al.'s language, the internal scale could be described as the self perception of positive and/or negative
events being a consequence of one's own action, and the external scale as the perception of others of positive andor negative events arising from the consequences of one's own action. These perceptions are a cognitive process, and there is no suggestion of accepting responsibility for control.

In a review of the work on locus of control as it applies to alcoholics, Hinciohsen (1976) concluded that nearly all studies can be criticised on methodological grounds, and that no compelling data support the identification of alcoholics as either internally or externally orientated, which is a view supported by Abbott, (1979). It is not even clear Whether Rotter's Internal-External Locus of Control Scale retains construct validity when it is applied to alcoholics. De Blij and Hinrichsen (1980) administered Rotter's I-E scale and a number of other measures including subscales of the Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale and the Thematic Apperception Test, to 90 male inpatient alcoholics. They conclude that their data raise serious questions about the construct validity of the $I-E$ scale when applied to alcoholics. Nevertheless, internality as well as externality has been associated with problem drinking (e.g. Barnes, 1979; Distefano, Pryer and Garrison, 1972; Goss and Morosko, 1970; Donovan and 0 Leary, 1978; McClelland, Davis, Kalin and Wanner, 1972). Given that race and ses are likely to affect locus of control data (e. g. Obitz, 1978; Hurlburt, Gade and Fuqua, 1983) and that the samples used are inadequately described (Abbott, 1979), it is not surprising that the cesults have been inconsistent.

So rar, two scales have been developed specifically for
measuring the locus of control in alcoholics.

The first is the drinking related locus of control seale (Oziel, Obitz and Keyson, 1972) which translates generalized locus of control into speciric locus of control with regard to drinking behaviour. Donovan and o'Leary (1978) describe the reliability, factor structure and validity of the scale. They report on three intrapersonal, interpersonal and general control factors and that further work on its concurrent and construct validity is needed to determine its utility. However, they also consider that the scale has considerable potential as a research tool ror investigating treatment and relapse.

The second scale has been designed to measure alcoholics perception of the locus of their drinking problem as internal or external. The Locus of the Drinking Problem (LoDP) scale (Stafford, 1980) includes dimensions of control, responsibility, choice, blame and problem causality. Stafford developed the scale to include cognitive components which were likely to contribute to the attribution of the locus of a drinking problem, and proposed that the variables could be perceived along an internal-external continuum. Stafford hypothesised that persons subscribing to the disease model of alcoholism would perceive the locus of their drinking problem as more external than the locus perceived by persons preferring another explanation. The disease model encourages the view that alcoholics are not responsible for their condition and behaviour (e. g. Pomerleau, pertschuk and Stinnett, 1976; Robinson, 1972; Roman and Trice, 1968). Stafford also hypothesised that when alcoholics perceived a
high external locus of drinking problem they would be more likely to want the help of others. The LoDp was developed from data on 116 inpatient alcoholics who were administered the $I-E$ scale and the 23 items of the LoDp scale. The 23 items dealt with six different aspects of drinking problems responsibility, control, blame, choice, causality and control of drinking. Non-significant correlations were found between the $I-E$ and LODP scales. Stafford argues that the two scales are therefore measuring two different variables - the $T-E$ measuring generalised expectancy concerning locus of control of reinforcements and the LODP measuring perception of the locus of responsibility, blame, choice and control regarding problem drinking. Both of Stafford's hypotheses were confirmed according to LODP scale scores. Wanting help from others correlated highly with the attribution of responsibility, control, blame, choice and causality to external factors. Also, persons who subscribed to the disease model were more likely to perceive the locus of their drinking problem as external.

A further finding from Stafford's LODP scores was that the more previous treatment alcoholics received, the more likely they were to perceive the locus of drinking problems as external. This result is at odds with Oziel and obitz (1975) who found that alcoholics who had more treatment perceived themselves in greater control, both of behaviour in general as measured by the $I-E$ scale and drinking behaviour as measured by Oziel and Obitz's own Locus of Drinking Control Scale.
results of studies using the $I-E$ scale with alcoholics is that the $I-E$ scale examines too general an attitude to be useful for predicting in the more specific situation (Roter, 1975). The LODP scale, however, is more specific to the situation of a drinking problem and the perception of responsibility, control, blame, choice and causality of drinking. Starpord concludes that it may be more fruitful and relevant to treatment to investigate differences between alcoholics on the dimensions tapped by the LODP rather than the I-E scale.

The LODP scale measures the subject's own internal-external perception: the perception of others, or the external perception in the problem drinking construct, is not measured. This does not mean that the LODP scale is necessarily invalid - it was not designed to measure the construct of problem drinking. It was earlier argued that the perception of others should contribute towards the measurement of problem drinking, since problem drinkers are likely to affect others in their immediate environment. To what extent the LODP items sample the content domain of problem drinking is not clear, and it is reasonable to assume that the scale cannot be used to identify problem drinkers. Nevertheless, the LODP scale is the first explicit attempt to measure the subjects own perception of their drinking problem.

Later, Stafford (1982) recognised the importance of the contribution of others perceptions towards the locus of an individual's perceived drinking problem, not so much as a
measure of problem drinking, but as the effect internal and external views have on treatment. Earlier it was suggested that individuals with high internally derived scores were likely to be more motivated to receiving help or treatment. The implication here is obvious: if both treatment personnel and problem drinkers perceive the problem drinking subconstructs in the same way (that is, a high external and high internal representation) then the therapeutic outcome is likely to be positive. Martini and Brook (1978) suggest that similarity in attitudes and values of a therapist and his patient correlates positively with improved treatment outcome. Stafford (1982) proposes that treatment personnel and alcoholics perceive the locus of drinking problems differently. In the problem drinking construct, this is equivalent to contrasting external and internal representations.

There has been very little other research on how problem drinkers or treatment personnel differ in views, and most has been related to the perception of control using the $I-E$ scale (e.g. Marcus, 1963; Donovan and O'Leary, 1975, 1978) rather than the perception of the locus of drinking problems. However, Stafford (1982) modified the LODP scale by changing the words "I" and "me" to "alcoholics" and "the alcoholic" and gave it to 29 alcoholism counsellors. While this study did not match counsellors views with the views of alcoholics, it did nevertheless indicate how treatment personnel view the locus of alcoholics problems. Using the results from the development of the LoDP scale, Stafford was then able to compare the view of treatment personnel with the view of alcoholics. As stafford predicted, the views differed.

Treatment personnel regarded alcoholics as more responsible, Less to blame, less in control and having greater internal causation than alcoholics view themselves.

In summary, the research on how problem drinters perceive the expectancy of internal or external reinforcement as measured by the Rotter Internal-External Locus of Control scale is restricted to dependent problem drinkers and is inconclusive because of methodological difficulties and contradictory results. Starford's (1982) Locus of the Drinking Problem scale looks promising as a measure of problem drinkers' perceptions of the locus of their drinking problems. There is some evidence based on the LODP scale to show that treatment personnel and alcoholics view the locus of the alcoholics drinking problems diferently. Since the LODP scale includes dimensions of responsibility, choice, blame and problem causality, the use of this scale to measure treatment personnels' views and the views of alcoholics about the alcoholics' drinking problems, suggests that when the scale is used in this way it may relate closely to the internal and external scales in the problem drinking construct. However, this is only speculation, and it is likely that if there is any relationship between the LODP scale and the construct of problem drinking, it will be between the internal dimension of the LoDp scale and the internal scale of the construct; that is, problem drinkers Who perceive the locus of their drinking problem to be internal are likely to score highly on measures designed to identify self perceptions of drinking problems. The external dimension of the LoDp scale is not likely to be contiguous with the external construct scale. The external LODP

## FIGURE 8

$\frac{\text { Relationship of Dependent to Non-Dependent }}{\text { Problem Drinking }}$

dimension attributes blame to others for drinking problems, while the external scale in the problem drinking construct is intended to determine whether others perceive whether or not a drinking problem exists. It is unlikely that Rotter's $I-E$ scales will have an obvious relationship to the construct, since Rotter's scales are related to control while the construct scales relate to perception of problems.

The application of labelling theory (Tannentrum, 1938) to problem drinking was first discussed by Roman and Trice (1968), who suggested that the negative alcoholic label of others leads to the acceptance of an alcoholic's self-view. These external perceptions of others, and their effect on the problem drinker, have been viewed from a social resources perspective (Keil, Usul and Busch, 1983) and from self-efficacy theory (Rollnick and Heather, 1982). A fuller discussion of this is given in Appendix $A$. It is sufficient to say that the external perceptions of others may influence an individual's internal perception on subconstruct scales, leading to an acceptance of a problem drinking self-view.

## 3. 6 ALCOHOL DEPENDENCE AND NON-DEPENDENCE AND THE PROBLEM DRINRING CONSTRUCT

In Chapter two it was proposed that there are two major types of problem drinking - those who are alcohol dependent (the alcoholics) and those who are non-dependent problem drinkers. Their relationship is represented in Figure 8 .

## FIGURE 9

Some Levels of Subconstructs in Problem Drinking


The relationship between dependent and non-dependent problem drinking can be expressed in construct terms. problem drinkers represent one pole of the construct scale and encompass a variety of other subconstructs such as blackouts, memory loss, morning drinking etc. In Figure 9 the first level down from problem drinking is the dependent versus non dependent scale. Succeeding levels will have complex inter-relationship and these would be difficult to represent diagramatically. Therefore, in Figure 9 after the non-dependent versus dependent scale only the elements at one pole of the scales are shown for a sample of possible subconstructs from the content domain of problem drinking.

The selection of which elements are likely to represent the content domain is the subject of Experiment $I$. However, the overlap in the dependent - non-dependent soale illustrates that many lower level scales share both poles of the construct. For example, a dependent problem drinker may be involved in arguments and fights: so too may a non-dependent one, although their representation or the arguments and rights scale may be quite different.

The natural history of the progression of non-dependent to dependent problem drinking has received little experimental study. Jellinek (1952) proposed a formal concept of an inexorable progression of problems with three major symptoms (blackouts, loss of control, prolonged intoxication) serving as markers of the prodromal, crucial, and chronic phases. However, serious problems with Jellinek's methodology have been described (e.g. Clark and Cahalan, 1977; Orford and

Hawker, 1974; Park, 1973; Trice and Hahl, 1958; Pattison et al., 1977). In recent research, there has been less focus on "disease idiology" (Taber, Quay, Mark and Nealey, 1969) and a greater emphasis on the development and correlates of particular problems related to drinking. While alcohol problems may sometimes develop as a series of increasingly serious consequences, this is not always the case (e.g. Clark and Cahalan, 1977 ; Fillmore, 1974; Goodwin, Davis and Robins, 1975; Vaillant, 1983; Vaillant and Milofsky, 1982). Clark and Cahalan's (1976) clinical observations over four years have indicated that individual alcohol problems are numerous, and do not always progress from the less to the more severe. They conclude that:

The apparent rapidity with which particular problems arise and subside suggest the possibility that situational factors may have a strong bearing on the problem drinker's behaviour. (Clark and Cahalan, 1977, p.183).

In the context of the construct problem drinking, the development of alcohol problems can be seen in terms of movement on the subconstruct scales. If the content domain was represented by the subconstructs in Figure 9, for example, then all problem drinkers will have a representation on each of these scales. The cited evidence that particular problems arise and subside over time can be seen in terms of changing representations on these scales. If there were only two possible outcomes on each scale (and it was earlier argued in Sec. 3.3 that there would be numerous outcomes), then in Figure 9 there would be 1012 possible combinations, which illustrates well the idiosyncratic nature of responses.

Because the World Health Organisation defined alcohol dependence as being either psychological or physical or both (sec. 303, International Classification of Diseases, 9th Revision) it is difficult to establish clearly which subconstructs are shared by non-dependent and dependent problem drinkers and which are not. Physical dependence by itself is clearly marked by withdrawal symptoms in the absence of regular alcohol intake. These subconstructs include tremor, nausea, sweating, delirium tremens and withdrawal seizures. It should therefore be possible to sample and measure the subconstructs in the content domain of physical dependence. There have been two recent attempts to do this (Raistrick, Dunbar and Davison, 1983; Stockwell, Murphy and Hodgson, 1979) although neither have clearly distinguished between physical and psychological dependence. In an excellent review on the progressive development of alcohol problems Pattison, Sobell and Sobell, (1977) conclude that:

Physical dependence does not appear to be a permanent state but may vary with subsequent patterns of drinking once established. The degree of physical dependence appears to be reversible. (p.193).
and that:

> Alcohol problems may be partially or completely reversed through either a naturalistic process or through a treatment programme. (p. 192 ).

The reversibility of alcohol problems, whether they relate to dependence or non-dependence, suggests that measures of the problem drinking subconstructs are likely to be time dependent. That is, an individual's score on scales will vary over time. It is possible that the subconstructs of dependent problem drinking are likely to be more stable over
time than those of non-dependent problem drinking, although this author can find no evidence to support or contradict this.

In summary, dependent and non-dependent problem drinking and any other cinical labels are simply subconstructs of the construct problem drinking. It is suggested that dependent and non-dependent problem drinking are two major types of problem drinking, each of which contains numerous other lower level scales. The unstable state of problem drinking can be observed by movement within each of these scales. Since the scores on the scales can be summed to obtain an overall problem drinking score it would be possible for a person to have the same total score at two different points in time but have a completely different set of subconstruct measures The cited evidence suggests that this may be one distinct possibility.

## 3. 7 SUMMARY

In this chapter the theory for problem drinking as a construct is described, based on George Kelly's definition of a personal construct. The theory describes a way in which various aspects of problem drinking, termed subconstructs, could relate to each other to determine an overall measure of the problem drinking construct

The measure on each subconstruct is determined by the perception of the problem by the individual in question, and the perception of others. It is suggested that these external and internal perceptions are combined in some way to
produce a total problem drinking score. It is also suggested that the external component is necessary because the consequences of problem drinking usually have some impact on other people, and that there are times when a problem drinker would not agree with or notice this erfect.

Kelly has stated that all constructs are bipolar and can be represented by the value 0 and 1 for each end of their scales, and that these numbers can be combined to form a total score. Since Relly does not clearly give a method for combining scores, a mathematical explanation was developed to give a possible method for summing them as they apply to the problem drinking construct (see Appendis B); that is, an attempt is made to translate the terms and ideas presented in this chapter, into a structure which can be represented by matrix equations. While in theory these equations do have solutions, in practice these solutions will not always be possible, although there is a simple case where a problem drinking score can be derived on the basis of test results. It is this simple case which is used in the experiments.

With regard to idiographic and nomothetic measurement, it is concluded that it is difficult to decide which type of measurement is appropriate for problem drinking since the choice of measure depends on whether individual differences do exist within the construct. Since there is little or no evidence to support or contradict individual difeerences in problem drinking, it is suggested that the measurement of this construct should use a combination of these methods.
little relation to the construct of problem drinking because the construct is not concerned with control. However, the more recent Locus of Drinking problem Scale (Stafford, 1982) may parallel very well with the internal perception dimension of the construct. Stafford's modified scale which determines the views of others on an individual's drinking problems may also relate to the external dimension.

Labelling and selfoefficacy theory (summarised in Appendix A) explains a possible relationship between the external and internal dimensions on the subconstruct scales. That is, the perception of others about an individual's drinking can modify the person's own views to an extent which could lead to the acceptance of a problem drinking self-view.

It has been suggested that problem drinking incorporates non-dependent and dependent drinkers. Both of, these categories and any others contained in them were described as subconstructs of the problem drinking construct, and so alcohol dependence is one such subconstruct. There is substantial evidence that problem drinking may at times be reversible. This reversibility or movement is viewed as movement on subconstruct scales and it is likely that any person will not have exactly the same representations at any two points in time, even though a measure of their score on the problem drinking construct may not change.

Before an example can be developed in Experiments $I$ to $V$ of an instrument to measure the construct of problem drinking, it is necessary to first review in the following chapter, the main tests which are able to measure some aspect of problem

```
drinking. In the context of problem drinking as it is
defined in this thesis, all curcent instruments are only able
to measure part of the construct or in other words, some of
the problem drinking subconstructs. Most commonly available
are tests designed to measure the dependent problem drinking
subconstruct.
```


## CHAPTER FOUR

PROBLEM DRINKING MEASURES: A REVIE日

## 4. 1 INTRODUCTION

This review will cocus on available problem drinking scales. Since the authors of nearly all instruments do not clearly state what the measure is intended to do other than to detect alcoholism or alcoholics, it is reasonable to assume that the instruments are designed to measure some aspect of dependent problem drinking. As with earlier chapters, the term "alcoholic" will be used here as it applies in the reviewed measure. Also, most of the measures developed are test instruments for classifying persons as alcoholic or non-alcoholic.

The review is divided into psychological, biomedical, combined psychological and biomedical measures, and instruments encompassing a variety of other measures.

## 4. 2 PSYCHOLOGICAL MEASURES

Problem Drinking Scales of the Minnesota Multiphasie Personality Inventory (MMPI)

In the $1950^{\circ}$ s three scales based on the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI) were developed (Hampton, 1953;

Holmes, 1956; Hoyt and Sedlacek, 1958) to identicy personality characteristics of alcoholics which distinguish
them from non-alcoholics (Hoyt and Sedlacek, 1956). However, MacAndrew and Geertsma (1964) round that these scales were primarily measures of maladjustment, and did not discriminate between alcoholics and non-alcoholics. The Hampton (1953) A1 Scale was cross-validated on 100 alcoholics and 150 non-alcoholics, producing significant mean differences. On a cross-validation study, Holmes's (1956) Am Scale discriminated significantly between alcoholics and normals.

The Ah scale of Hoyt and Sedlacek (1958) was an evaluated scale on two groups of alcoholics, three groups of normals, and four groups of psychiatric controls. Their scale successfully distinguished alcoholics from normals, but not Grom psychiatric patients. When MacAndrew and Geertsma (1964) administered the Al, Am, and Ah scales to 300 alcoholic and 300 psychiatric outpatients, the results produce low biserial correlations (.22, 34, and. 33 for A1, Am, and Ah, respectively). Other research (Apfeldorf and Hunley, 1973; Rich and Davis, 1969; Rotman and Vestre, 1964; Uecker, Kish and Ball, 1969; Vega, 1971) has consistently shown Holmes's Am scale to differentiate inpatient alcoholics from non-alcoholic psychiatric inpatients.

In 1965 MacAndrew developed another problem drinking scale using MMPI items to differentiate outpatient alcoholios from non-alcoholic psychiatric outpatients. Using 300 alcoholic and 300 psychiatric outpatients he eventually round 49 items which discriminated the two groups. The scale correctiy classified 81.5 percent. Subsequent research has shown the MacAndrew scale to differentiate alcoholics and non-alcoholic patients in a variety of settings (Apreldorf and Hunley, 1973; DeGroot and Adamson, 1973; Kranitz, 1972; Rhodes, 1969,

Rich and Davis, 1969; Vega, 1971; Whisler and Canter, 1966; Williams, McCourt and Schneider, 1971; Apfeldorf and Hunley, 1973; Hoffman, Loper and Kammeier, 1974). However, some studies have indicated potential limitations of the MacAndrew scale. Uecker (1970) Found that psychiatric controls scored much higher on the MacAndrew scale than did MacAndrew's outpatient sample, creating a high rate of false positives. Kranitz (1972) and Lachar, Berman, Grisell and Schooff (1976) both found the MacAndrew scale was unable to distinguish alcoholics from heroin addicts, suggesting the scale may measure a general addiction propensity. In another study (Ruff, Ayres and Templer, 1975) the MacAndrew scale was unable to differentiate alcoholics and criminals, although Clopton (1978) reels the authors should have used the MacAndrew scale to differentiate alcoholic and non-alcoholic criminals, not alcoholics and criminals.

Rhodes (1969) replicated the original MacAndrew (1965) study with a sample of 200 male outpatient alcoholics and 200 male psychiatric outpatients. The scale correctly classified 80 percent of the alcoholics and 71.5 percent of the psychiatric patients. Rhodes concluded that the MacAndrew scale is valid within the population for which it was designed, namely outpatients.

This view is partially supported by Schwartz and Graham (1979) who administered the scale to 161 male and 228 female psychiatric patients of which 64 were alcoholic (44 male, 20 female). For females, the MacAndrem scale difrerentiated alcoholics from other psychiatric patients although railed to do this significantly for males. The authors feel that the
lack of discrimination between the male alcoholic and non-alcoholic subjects may have been due to a signiricant number of males in the non-alcoholic group who had alcohol problems but were able to conceal them effectively from hospital personnel, as Round in an earlier study by Lachar et a1. (1976).

Four scales (Al, Am, Ah, and a "revised" MacAndrew scale developed by Rich and Davis, 1969) were compared in a study by Rich and Davis (1969). The Al scale failed to discriminate male alcoholics from psychiatric patients, and the Ah failed to differentiate female alcoholics and normals. The revised MacAndrew scale was the most accurate at differentiating alcoholics from other groups, although the original MacAndrew scale was better at discriminating female alcoholics from psychiatric controls. However, Miller (1976) suggests that because the base rate for problem drinking in the Rich and Davis study was much higher than normally expected, then the power of the tests to identify alcoholics was probably exaggerated compared to the normal clinical setting.

Vega (1971) tested the $A 1, A m$, and $A h$ and MacAndrew scale on inpatient alcoholics, psychiatric controls, and inpatient non-psychiatric controls. The Ah failed to discriminate alcoholics from others and the MacAndrew provided the poorest discrimination mainly because of a large number of false positives (19 percent). Most of the ralse positives were in the normal group, which is not surprising since the MacAndrew scale was developed on asychiatric rather than a normal control group.

Rosenberg (1972) developed an ARos scale from items common to the MacAndrew, Ah, and Am scales on the basis of their ability to discriminate inpatient alcoholics from psychiatric controls. The Al scale was omitted because it was found to correlate highly with the Welsh Ansiety scale of the MMPI. Hoffman et al. (1974) in a longitudinal study round that the ARos and MacAndrew scale difrerentiated pre-alcoholic profiles from those of controls, raising the possibility of using these scales to identify high risk individuals before the development of their alcohol problems. However, Miller (1976) believes further research is needed on these scales before early identification can be undertaken with any confidence.

Atsaides, Neuringer and Davis (1977) developed and validated an eight-item MMPI scale to dirferentiate inpatient alcoholics from inpatient neurotics. The scale correctly classified over $85 \%$ of the psychiatric inpatients in both the original and cross-validation studies. There have been no further reports on this scale.

Reviewers differ on the ability of MMPI scales to differentiate alcoholics from non-alcoholics. Barry (1974) and Williams (1976) believe some consistent findings have been reported. For example, Barry reports consistent traits centering around assertion, sociability, confidence, and social pathology. Williams reports on four studies identifying pre-alcoholics as active, aggressive, impulsive, and anti-social. In contrast, other reviewers (Sutherland, Schroeder and Todella, 1950; Syme, 1957; Franks, 1970;

Miller, 1976) question evidence that alcoholics have personality traits characteristic of alcoholics.

Franks believes that psychometric assessment of the personality of alcoholics should be abandoned. Apfeldorf (1981) says that some resolution will take place on the contrasting conclusions about the MMPI's ability to differentiate alcoholics from non-alcoholics when attention is paid to the methodological factors. Apfeldorf (1974) found that studies applying MMPI scales reported personality traits characteristic of alcoholics, while those applying other MMPI clinical scales reported contrasting conclusions. Rosen (1960) suggests that studies incorporating comparison groups sampled from the same source (rather than the usual control subjects from another source) would clarify findings of a consistent psychopathic deviance MMPI elevations in alcoholics, a belief supported Apfeldorf (1981). Apfeldorf gives examples of six studies using MMPI scales on hospital alcoholics (Button, 1956; Hoyt and Sedlacek, 1958; Hill, Haertzen and Davis, 1962; Goldstein and Linden, 1969;

Whitelock, Overall and Patrick, 1971; English and Curtin, 1975) where there was no control for the source of sample.

Apfeldorf suggests that these studies make it difficult to determine whether the scores reflect sample procedures rather than personality characteristics unique to alcoholics. Apfeldorf also suggests the same problem applies to the many studies reporting that fd elevations characterise alcoholics (e.g. Hewitt, 1943; Manson, 1948; Hampton, 1953; Button, 1956; Hoyt and Sedlacek, 1958; Hill et al., 1962; Goldstein and Linden, 1969; Goss and Morosko, 1969; Rohan, Tatro and

Rotman, 1960; Whitelock et al., 1971; English and Curtin, 1975).

However, the study of Loper, Rammeier and Hoggman, (1973) shows that Pd elevations were already present in pre-alcoholics who were not manifesting any signs of maladjustment or deviance. Loper et al's study also incorpsated comparison groups controlling for the source of sample, It is for this reason that Apfeldorf (1981) says that further work is needed on the Pd scale. Also, the Pd scale may not measure the same traits as the MacAndrew scale since correlations between the $P d$ and the MacAndrew scale are low (Apfeldorf and Hunley, 1973).

## Summary of MMPI Scales

Attempts to derive a problem drinking seale from the MMPI have produced no fewer than seven scales: Hampton's Al (1953), Holmes' Am (1953), Hoyt and Sedlacek's Ah (1958), MacAndrew's (1965), Rich and Davis' revised scale (1969), Rosenberg's ARos (1972), and Atsaides et al's (1977).

The MacAndrew scale of the MMPI was developed in an outpatient setting but has also been shown to be useful with other treatment populations. Atsaides et al's (1977) scale may be potentially valuable for differentiating alcoholics from neurotics in an inpatient setting. Hampton's (1953) A1 scale has questionable value, and evidence on Holme's (1956) Am and Hoyt and Sedlacek's (1958) Ah scales is mised.
from a generally normal population, then the revised MacAndrew scale, which contains elements from the Al, Am, and Ah, may have considerable potential value. Miller also says that the MacAndrew scale is useful for populations for which it was designed, that is, the general psychiatric population. However, the weakness of the MacAndrew scale is in the percentage of f alse positives it produces, especially with inpatients. Rosenberg's (1972) ARos scale may be very good at identifying alcoholics within an inpatient psychiatric population.

When the scales and the literature are reviewed, three points emerge. First, the research on the validity of the scales has not yielded consistent results. For example, two studies (Vega, 1971; Hays and Stacy, 1983) found the Hampton scale valid, while four did not (MacAndrew and Geertsma, 1964; Rotman and Vestre, 1964; Uecker, Kish and Ball, 1969; Holmes, Dungan and McLaughlin, 1982). Also, several studies were favourable towards the MacAndrew Scale (e.g., Rich and Davis, 1969; Schwartz and Graham, 1979), while others were not (e.g., Whisler and Cantor, 1966; Zager and Megargee, 1981). Second, given that all the scales should be measuring the same construct it is surprising given the validity findings, that at least five of the scales contain only three common MMPI items (Holmes et al., 1982). Last, all the scales assume that alcoholics are a homogeneous group and the scales do not differentiate between past and present problems.

For every argument supporting an MMPI scale, there is counter evidence against its use. However, one consistent ract is evident: all the scales yield ralse positives and false
negatives to an extent that warrants caution in their use (e.g., Cox, 1979; Holmes et al., 1982).

Other Psycholoqical Measures

The following review does not include scales designed to identify problem drinkers on the basis of personality traits: an excellent discussion of these measures is given in Miller (1976). Instead, the focus will be on measures designed to directly assess the behavioural consequences of problem drinking.

Recently Brudger (1982) developed the Drug and Alcohol Abuse Predicter Scale by combining the MacAndrew scale with two scales of anomie (Srole, 1956; McCloskey and Schaar, 1965) and the California Psychological Inventory $F$ Scale (Adorno, Frenkel-Brunswik, Levinson and Sanford, 1950). The scale was given to 60 psychiatric inpatients and 60 inpatient alcoholics and proved to have significantly greater classification precision with patients than did the MacAndrew scale. However, the scoring system is rather complex involving the clinical interpretation of two mathematical equations and the extensive use of a calculator.

Kalin (1972) attempted to devise a more effective scale using an inventory based on the California Psychological Inventory (Adorno et al., 1950). Williams, McCourt and Schneider, (1971) Sound the Anti-social Behaviour Scale of the kalin Test was more effective than the MacAndrew Scale in discriminating heavy drinkers from light drinkers in a state

Hospital sample. However, kalin selected items for the scale on their ability to differentiate heavy drinkers from light drinking college students. This approach has been criticised by Apfeldorf (1981) on the grounds that not all heavy drinkers are likely to become alcoholics.

The first scale which directly enquired about drinking and alcohol-related behaviours was the ALCADD Test (Manson, 1949a, 1949b). The $60-i t e m$ scale was administered to 123 alcoholic and 159 non-alcoholic men and women, and only three alcoholics and seven non-alcoholics were misclassified. The ALCADD Test is Erequently used in clinical settings but has rarely been reported in research. Murphy (1956) Cound the test discriminated 24 active and 34 abstinent alcoholics from 34 social drinkers and 28 abstaining non-alcoholies. Ross (1973) Round the ALCADD significantly correlated with the Taylor (1953) Manifest Anxiety Scale and with the Psychasthenia Scale of the MMPI. Other studies have included the ALCADD Test (e.g. Carter, 1966; Gerbanowitz and Moore, 1981), but have assumed rather than tested its validity.

The CAGE questionnaire (Ewing and Rouse, 1970) was the second scale produced which directly assessed the consequences of drinking. The CAGE questionnaires derives its name from the four questions it contains: "Have you ever felt you should cut down on your drinking?" "Have people annoyed you by criticising your drinking?" "Have you ever felt bad or guilty about your drinking?" "Have you ever had a drink Rirst thing in the morning to steady your nerves or get rid or a hangover (eyeopener)?"

Maycield, MoLeod and Hall, (1974) gave the CAGE to 366 psychiatric patients (39 percent alcoholic) over a one year period and found that with two or three positive responses as the criterion for alcoholic, 81 percent of alcoholics were correctly identified and 11 percent of non-alcoholics were misclassified. Other than this study, there appears to be no further evaluation of the CAGE on different populations and in different settings. Like the ALCADD, the CAGE is nevertheless frequently used in clinical settings but has rarely been mentioned in research. Gabrynowicz and Moore (1981) have includedthe CAGE as one of a number of scales in a questionnaire which describes a profile for drinking drivers.

Hoodruff, Clayton, Cloninger and Guze (1976) gave 1, 350 psychiatric patients a "research diagnosis" of problem drinking to determine which or 18 key symptoms in the diagnosis would provide a means for the rapid screening. The subjects included 151 alcoholics and 1,199 non-alcoholics, previously classified on a clinical judgement on which of the 18 items would be used for the final test. In this context the study design appears to be introspective in that the items being evaluated were used to classify the original groups. The correlation between the diagnosis and the report of the subjects that they drink too much, or that a relative or cardinal figure in their environment is reported to be:
high enough that we could not expect any screening interview to runction more efriciently. (p. 435).

However, the correlation is not reported, and there is no evidence of the test elsewhere in the literature.

In 1982 Skinner developed a 28-item self-report quantitative index of problems related to drug misuse. The scale, the Drug Abuse Screening Test (DAST), was given to 223 volunteers seeking help for their drug/alcohol abuse. Eifty-nine percent had alcohol problems, 25 percent drug problems, and 16 percent had both alcohol and drug problems. The DAST, which parallels the items on Selzer's (1971) Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST), was found to have a uni-dimensional scale, which suggested that a numerical score would give an indication of the severity of drug misuse. The internal consistency reliability estimate was substantial at 0. 92 and a factor analysis revealed a dimension reflecting problems related to drug abuse. A 20-item short version of the DAST correlated highly with the original 28 -item version, indicating that the short version may be equally as good as the original DAST. However, Skinner points out that the DAST considers drugs as a generic group, and does not assess the consequences related to each particular class of drug use.

Given that many alcoholics are polydrug abusers, this scale should be particularly appropriate for these patients. The DAST is useful for quantifying the extent of drug involvement within a help-seeking population, and further validation work will be required in other populations and settings.

Some of the criticism directed at the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST) has been the use of the word "ever" and the dichotomy of the responses "yes" or "no". This style of responding tends to overestimate the prevalence of problem drinking in a given population and makes it impossible to distinguish between current and former alcoholics (Eavazza
and Pires, 1974; Favazza and Cannell, 1977).

Magruder-Habib, Harris and Fraker, (1982) have attempted to refine the MAST in order to distinguish between past and present alcoholism. Their test, the Veterans Alcoholism Screening Test (VAST), contains the original 24 questions Erom the MAST, but each of the 24 original MAST questions is followed by three questions designed to identify the speciric time period to which an answer indicating problem drinking refers. The time periods are: within the last year (considered as "current"); more than a year ago but not more than five years ago; and more than five years ago.

In a comparative study Magruder-Habib et al. (1982) gave the VAST and MAST to 118 general medical and surgical outpatients and independently to their close relatives. The VAST was found to be more valid indicator of alcoholism than the MAST. The prevalence estimates varied dramatically between the VAST ( 24 percent with current problem drinking) and the MAST (46 percent with problem drinking), indicating the importance between current and past assessment. However, one drawback of the VAST is its length, and the fact that it was based on a restricted population (all men, veterans, and relatively old). Like other tests, the VAST needs validation on other populations and in other settings.

In 1976 Edwards and Gross formulated the Alcohol Dependence Syndrome, comprising a cluster of psychophysiological symptoms ranged upon a continuum of severity and principally centred around a "drive" to consume alcohol. Following a widespread acceptance of this syndrome amongst clinical
practitioners and researchers (Hodgson, 1980), several psychological questionnaires have been developed to measure alcohol dependence.

The first questionnaire was the Hilton Drinking Behaviour Questionnaire (HDBQ) (Hilton and Lokare, 1978). The HDBQ was based on the proposition that although there are wide variations in the type of problems caused by alcohol abuse, there are certain symptoms which are generally considered to indicate alcohol dependence. The 34 items in the questionnaire cover stages in the development of dependence, reasons for drinking, and the physiological consequences of alcohol dependence.

The HDBQ was given to 48 non-alcoholics and 43 unmatched controls. Subjects were alo given the ALCADD (Manson, 1949) and the $H D B Q$ was round to be statistically dependent on the total and sub-scale scores of the ALCADD. Factor analysis revealed a unidimensional scale relating to dependence on alcohol. However, since the original paper on the $H D B Q$, there has been no reference to this questionnaire in the literature, either as a means for assessment or as a research tool.

Stockwell et al. (1979) developed the Severity of Alcohol Dependence Questionnaire (SADQ) which they deemed necessary since,
to date, no such questionnaire has been devised which both stems from a clear recognition of a core syndrome of alcohol dependence and observes the crucial distinction between the essential features of this syndrome and the diverse consequences and problems which may be associated with both dependent drinking and heavy non-dependent
drinking. (p.79).
The SADQ is divided into five sections corresponding to: physical withdrawal symptoms; effective symptoms of withdrawal; craving and withdrawal-relief drinking; typical daily consumption; and rapidity of reinstatement of symptoms after a period of abstinence. The respondent is also instructed to focus on his or her most recent period of heavy drinking that was also typical of their heavy drinking. In all, the $S A D Q$ consists of 33 questions.

The questionnaire was completed by 104 respondents who were either outpatients or inpatients at a treatment unit. Seventy-two of the patients were independently rated for alcohol dependence on a scale from minimal alcohol dependence to severe dependence by two clinicians. The principal components and factor analysis revealed a single factor accounting for a large proportion of the total variance, and the correlation between the $S A D Q$ and the independent clinical assessment was 0.82.

It is important to note that the $S A D Q$ did not employ a control group in its development, and to date its ability to misclassify non-alcoholic patients has not been assessed. In a later paper Stockwell, Murphy and Hodgson (1983) described a revised version of the $\operatorname{SADQ}$ in which 13 of the original items were (unexplainably) dropped, to produce a 20 item SADQ. To measure the test-retest reliability and validity of the new form of the $S A D Q$, the questionnare was given to 45 inpatients at an alcohol treatment unit. To test the validity, the $S A D Q$ was compared with a drinking pattern interview, and an independent physician's assessment. While
no correlation coefficient has been reported, when the SADQ was made the dependent variable for the drinking pattern interview, 62 percent of the variance can be account for. The correlation coerficient between the physician's
assessment (based on liver function testing and withdrawal symptoms) and the $S A D Q$ varies from 0.01 to 0.29. To measure reliability, the $S A D Q$ was given twice to subjects within an interval of two weeks, and the correlations for each of the five sections on the SADQ ranged from 0.76 to 0.85.

The authors report there is good evidence of construct validity and concurrent validity based on their results, which is surprising since they present no evidence of these measures. Also, two previous commentators faulted the $S A D Q$ on the basis of its reliability and validity (Shaw, Harner, Borysow, Schmitz and Lieber, 1979; Chick, 1981). Raistricket al. (1983) have criticised the SADQ on the grounds it almost exclusively deals with withdrawal symptomatology and not with other aspects of alcohol dependence. Because of this, they state it is sensitive only to the severe end of the dependence continum and so is of limited usefulness as a measuring instrument.

In order to overcome this problem, Raistrick et al., (1983) have developed yet another questionnaire called The Alcohol Dependence Data (ADD), based on measures of dependency as described by Edwards and Gross (1976) but designed to be sensitive across the full range of dependence. The instrument also measures changes over time and present "state dependence". The 39 item ADD was given to three contrasted groups: 41 regular drinkers; 30 psychiatric patients; and 173
alcoholic inpatients.

Using various statistical procedures on this sample, the 39 item questionnaire was reduced to 15 items. The Spearman Split Half Reliability was 0.87. Very little other statistical information on the development of this test is presented, and its validity is yet to be reported. However, the Self-administered form of the Alcohol Dependence Data (SADD) is the first attempt to provide a short screening instrument for dependent problem drinkers.

The Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST)

The Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST) is perhaps the most widely discussed screening test for problem drinking in the literature. Since its development (Selzer, 1971) there have been over 25 articles reporting on various psychometric properties of the MAST, In addition, there have been numerous reports of the MAST being used as an instrument for prevalence studies and as an aid to help professionals make a diagnosis.

The MAST is a 25-item questionnaire which uses a
semi-structured interview format. The content relates to the respondent's self/appraisal of his drinking habits and to the social vocational and ramilial problems erequently associated with excessive drinking. The yes/no responses are summed to produce a single overall score representing the degree of alcohol involvement. A score of five or more points is regarded as alcoholic, while those sooring four are
viewed as manifesting borderline alcoholic symptomonology and those with three or less are seen as relatively well adjusted drinkers.

In its development the MAST was given to
three groups: 125 hospitalized white male alcoholics; 103 White male controls; and 307 persons with drinking and/or driving arrests. The validity of the MAST was assessed by searching the records of legal, social, and medical agencies and reviewing the subjects driving and criminal records. A total of ifteen subjects who scored in the non-alcoholic range on the MAST were subsequently found to be alcoholic, although Selzer found that 11 of the 15 (73 percent) failed to score because of denial. However, the MAST, which takes about 15 minutes to administer, was recommended for use in conjunction with arrest records.

Selzer, Vanosdall and Chapman (1971) administered the MAST to 838 problem drivers undergoing improvement interviews.

Ninety-five percent of the subjects were male and rifty-three percent were under the age of twenty-four years. MAST scores indicated that twenty-one percent were in the alcoholic or probably alcoholic range and twenty-five percent had at least one conviction for drunk driving or drunk and disorderly behaviour. It was concluded that the MAST was an effective instrument for screening out alcoholics in problem driver groups. Selzer and Chapman (1971) report that the converse is not true: the MAST could not predict or identiry which alcoholics are likely to be problem drivers.


#### Abstract

a shortened version of ten questions given to 60 hospitalized male alcoholics and 62 psychiatric patients. The two forms correlated highly, and the shortened test yielded a cut-orr point that correctly identified all alcoholics and produced seven ralse positives from the control group.


Moore (1971, 1972) examined the use of the MAST in two settings. Four hundred adult psychiatric patients (270 women and 130 men) were tested with the MAST. Firty percent of the men and 22 percent of the women scored in the alcoholic range. Of the 128 problem drinkers diagnosed by a psychiatric rating, the MAST missed only two, and the ratings and MAST were in agreement 78 percent of the time. Two hundred randomly selected patients from a general hospital population (129 females) were evaluated using the MAST and a physicians diagnosis. The MAST identified 90 percent and the physicians 50 percent of the 20 alcoholics identified with a previous history of alcohol dependence.

Miller (1976) is critical of the MAST on the grounds of diagnostic error, citing a study by Favazza and Pires (1974) who administered it to 183 active enlisted Navy men of which 75 were in medical and surgical wards. Thirty-one percent of medical and thirty-two percent of surgical patients were diagnosed as alcoholic which Miller considered an unacceptably high rate of false positives. Favazza and Pires, however, argue that the MAST may reflect an accurate diagnosis, reporting research indicating that as many as 39 of enlisted men may be problem drinkers.
with the MAST: There is the possibility that the patient will deny problems thus producing ralse negatives; the patient may be too disturbed to complete the test with accuracy; the scale may reflect a factor of general pathology and therefore be not successful in distinguishing alcoholics from other patients. In an attempt to rectify these problems McAuley et al. (1978) developed a Samily form of the MAST by altering the pronoun of each question from "you" to "he" or "she". One hundred and ninety patients (112 women) in a private psychiatric hospital were given the MAST and the patients' family members completed the Family form. Also, a psychiatric diagnosis was given by a physician for each patient using the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders DSM-III (American Psychiatric Association, 1980). The Family form and the MAST total scores were the same in 57 of the 75 completed cases and the patients scores indicated an agreement with a psychiatric diagnosis of alcohol dependence in 70 percent of cases.

These results were not asaccurate $\mathrm{as}_{\mathrm{n}}$ nan earlier study by Morse and Swenson (1975) who gave an expanded version of the MAST to a group of 50 hospitalized alcoholics and their spouses and counsellors. Data from the spouse responses were accurate in 90 percent of cases. Given the problems of denial and that some patients are not testable for one reason or another, both Morse et al. and McAuley et al. conclude that spouse responses and the family form of the MAST may be a more reliable source of information about drinking problems than in information obtained from the alcoholic.

Van Rooijen (1975) gave the 25 question MAST to 501 male drivers of which 228 were known alcoholics. Using a stepwise regression procedure 12 items were selected which best discriminated the alcoholic and non-alcoholic groups. An additional question was added because of its case finding importance, to produce the rinal 13 items of the Short MAST (SMAST). On the basis of high correlations between the SMAST and MAST (0.90 or greater) Selzer et al. suggest that the SMAST will do as well as the MAST as a sceening test for problem drinking. The authors point out an important aspect of the test which many researchers and clinicians often Sorget:
> it is important for clinician or researcher to remember that the MAST and SMAST are screening devices rather than rinal diagnostic instruments. (p.125).

Following the widespread acceptance of both the MAST and SMAST (e.g. Zung and Charalampous, 1975; Selzer et al. 1971; Yoder and Moore, 1973; Moore 1971; Favazza and Cannell, 1977; Miller, 1978; Funkhouser, 1978; Friedrich and Loftsgard, 1978; Cannell and Favazza, 1978; McAuley et al., 1978; Friedrich and Loftsgard, 1978; Zung and Ross, 1980; Zung, 1979, 1980, 1982; Skinner and Hen-Jenn, 1982; Benussi, Ballimberti, Zorzut, De Vanna and Gosparini, 1982), there has been an extensive investigation into its psychometric properties and its two briefer versions (MAST-10 and MAST-13).

In a study on 120 psychiatric in-patients (20 percent with an alcohol-related diagnosis on the DSM-III) Zung (1982) Cound the MAST to be 88 percent sensitive, consistent with the results of seven other studies in which valid positive rates
of 90 percent to 100 percent have been reported (Favazza and Pires, 1974; Friedrich and Loftsgard, 1978; Moore, 1971, 1972; Selzer, 1971; Zung and Ross, 1980; Siassi and Alston, 1976).

False positive rates have ranged from 12.5 percent (Moore, 1972) to 64 percent (Zung and Ross, 1980). Zung (1982) reports only a 58 percent agreement between the MAST and the DSM-III psychiatric diagnosis. However, Zung recognizes the shortcomings of a psychiatric diagnosis as a suitable criterion against which to validate the MAST and recommends the use of a problem-orientated record instead.

Various factorial studies of the MAST have identified a single broad factor defined by nearly all the test items (Zung, 1980a, 1980; Zung and Ross, 1980; Friedrich and Loftsgard, 1978; Skinner, 1979; Zung, 1978), which Zung (1980) has referred to as a general alcoholic impairment, measured along a continum of severity.

The MAST determines the consequence of problems with alcohol without reference to a specific time period. Temporal parameters such as time of onset, duration, and the most recent occasion of the problems are omitted. Measuring problems cumulatively over a lifetime does not allow for the possibility of remissions and may limit the test's validity and utility in treatment planning. Selzer et al. (1975) favours scoring current problems, but has not explained how this should be done.


#### Abstract

a time reference system for scoring the MAST (in the last year, in the last 1 to 5 years, more than 5 years agol and called their test the VAST. They claim the VAST is able to distinguish between patients who are currently alcoholics and those who have been alcoholics in the past. Zung (1982) has demonstrated that nearly half of all test responses on the MAST refer to problems said to have occurred most recently during the preceding six months.


Estimates of internal consistency for the MAST have been 0. 80 or greater (Skinner and Hen-Jenn, 1982; Zung, 1979; Selzer et al., 1975; Skinner, 1979) and similar results have been reported for test-retest reliability (Skinner and Hen-Jenn, 1982; Zung, 1979), suggesting that the MAST can assess ongoing patterns of alcohol use with a reasonably high degree of reliability, and that patients generally provide consistent responses to items describing drinking-related problems. However, method factors such as administration, the time reference period and the statistical procedures used have varied widely across studies and may contribute differentially to the outcome.

The MAST and its derivatives were developed exclusively for male subjects (e.g. "Does your wife (or parents) ever worry or complain about your drinking?", "Has drinking ever created problems with you and your wife?", "Has your wife (or other family member) ever gone to anyone for help about your drinking?"). However, nearly all subsequent studies on the MAST have involved both male and female subjects, which assumes the test's validity on a female population, possibly contributing towards the source of sample problems outlined
by Apereldorf(1981).


#### Abstract

Only one study has attempted to assess sex differences in MAST score reponses (Selzer, Gomberg and Nordhore, 1979). In this study the MAST was completed by all inpatients in a treatment programme of which 123 were men and 80 were women. Men alcoholics scored significantly higher than women alcoholics on two of the MAST questions but overall the authors report that the test is equally effective for both sexes. However, these results cannot be considered as validating the MAST for women, but rather are a comparison between men'sand women's responses on the MAST. It may be possible, for example, for women to have a higher rate of Calse positives or negatives on the MAST, which can be determined only by independent measures.


## Summary of Psychological Measures

Sixteen problem drinking scales have been reviewed for which evaluation data are available. There is evidence both for and against the use of the seven MMPI scales although they perform at their best when used on the population ror which they were developed. For example, the MacAndrew revised scale could be used to distinguish alcoholics from a generally normal population while the original MacAndrew scale is advisable for psychiatric outpatients; and the ARos scale may prove useful for identifying alcoholics in a psychiatric inpatient population. However, all the MMPI scales are long and are time-consuming to administer to patients, which is a major limiting factor.

The most well known direct measures generally contain broad content (e.g. ALCADD, CAGE, MAST) while more recent scales are orientated towards specific syndromes (HDBQ, SADQ, SADD), and have demonstrated a large rirst factor sometimes sufficient to explain the majority of individual differences on the instrument.

To date, the MAST has perhaps been the most utilised of all instruments for both research and clinical purposes. However, the MAST has yet to be interpreted in terms of the alcohol dependence syndrome, for which specific scales have been developed.

### 4.3 BIOMEDICAL MEASURES

## Laboratory Tests

Over the years there has been a constant search for laboratory markers to diagnose problem drinking. In a review of some of the biochemical and laboratory tests, Holt, Skinner and Israel (1981) cite about 117 attempts to use laboratory tests to diagnose alcohol abuse. There are, however, a number of problems with laboratory tests:

First, there is erequently disagreement about which markers best indicate alcohol abuse or a high alcohol consumption (e.g. blood or breath alcohol) and which markers give evidence of tolerance to alcohol or indicate alcohol dependence. Second, the relatively short halp-lipe of the
majority of markers and the sact that their presence alone does not predict the patient's drinking habits, orten detracts from their usefulness. Last, laboratory markers are only sensitive to the severe symptoms of alcohol abuse which may take five to ten years to develop through chronic heavy drinking (e.g. Lelbach, 1975).

A full review of laboratory tests will not be given here. This may be found in Holt et al. (1981) and in Clark and Kricka (1981). However, the markers which have been most widely investigated or used are serum-gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT), aspartate transferase (AST), and Mean Cell Volume (MCV). All of these tests are commonly available and are relatively cheap to use.

Perhaps the most extensively used of tests is GGT (see Ryback, Eckardt, Felsher and Rawlings, 1982; Eckardt, Ryback, Rawlings and Grauband, 1981; Chick, Krietman and plant, 1981; Bernadt, Mumford, Taylor and Smith, 1982). GGT values have shown to be two or three times the upper limit of the reference point for hospitalised alcoholics and outpatient alcoholics, returning to normal within a period of a few days in the absence of alcohol consumption (e.g. Rosalki, 1975; Freer and Statland, 1977; Rosalki and Rau, 1972). There is some evidence that alcoholics who drink daily will be more likely to be detected with elevated GGT than bout drinkers (Wiseman and Spencer-peet, 1977). However, many drugs can cause an elevation in GGT (e. g. heroine, morphine, cocaine, LSD, amphetamines, barbituates, cannabis, anticonvulsants) which limit its usefulness as a test, especially in hospital populations (Penn, Horthington, Clarke and Hhitfield, 1981;

Rosalki and Zilva, 1977; Whitehead, Pankov and Clarke, 1981).

Elevated GGT may also be found in cases of myocardial infarction, pancreatitis, renal railure and diabetes following radiotherapy (Clarke and Kricka, 1981). Thus the use of GGT as a diagnostic test is complicated by possible elevation due to other diseases, drug therapy and drug abuse. In addition to false positives, false negatives have been shown to occur amongst long standing alcoholics (skude et a1., 1977).

Reviewers of GGT suggest that at its best, an elevated value may suggest the possibilityof an alcohol problem (e.g. Clarke and Kricka, 1981; Penn and Worthington, 1983). Nevertheless GGT has been used to provide evidence of excessive drinking when denied by the patient (Kryszewski, Bardzik, Kilkowska, Vogel-pienkowska and Schmind, 1977), to verify abstinence when used in conjunction with AST measures (Reyes and Miller, 1980), to detect heptic disease in suspected alcoholics (Rosalki and Rau, 1972) and to measure treatment progress by serial measurements (Horner, Kellen, Kingstone, Majaraj and Malkin, 1979; Lamy, Baglin, Aron and Weill, 1975).

It has been suggested that GGT measurement may be of greater diagnostic value when combined with other markers of alcohol intake (Whitehead, Clarke and Whitfield, 1978 ) and when used in discriminant function models (Ellis, Horthy and Goldberg, 1980; Eckardt et al. 1981). However, these refinements have shown only a small improvement in its diagnostic value (Penn and Rorthington, 1981).

Aspartate transferase (AST) is a liver enzyme frequently raised in alcoholics, usually reflecting liver involvement, although may be raised due to muscular complaints on myocardial infarcation (Hed, Hygren and Sunblad, 1972). The diagnostic sensitivity of AST is much less than that of GGT, although ralse positives due to drug therapy are fewer (clark and Rricka, 1981). However, the evidence on the usepulness of AST as a laboratory marker is conrlicting.

Myrhed and Bergstron (1976) found significantly higher AST enzyme levels among the higher alcohol consumers of 92 alcohol discordant male twins aged 45-65 years. Whitehead (1978) measured elevated AST levels in 2034 healthy men and round 8 percent raised, a finding which was almost identical in a subgroup of 146 whose alcohol intake was in excess of the normal value (more than four drinks per day).

Further evidence on the lack of AST to discriminate between high and low consumers is given by Bliding, Bliding, Fex and Tornquist (1982) who investigated raised enzyme levels in 150 men from the armed forces with known alcohol consumption. In contrast, Bang, Iverson, Jagt and Madsen (1958) found a rise in AST arter acute alcohol intoxication in 27 of 35 alcoholic patients, and Brohult, Carlson and Reichard (1966) were able to show that a single dose of alcohol (about $3 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{kg}$ body wt) administered to apparently healthy men, produced a signiricant rise in AST after its intake.

In another study, Konttinen, Hartel and Louhija (1970) Found AST was abnormal in alcoholics more otten than other liver


#### Abstract

enzymes. However, all the studies on the ability of ASt to discriminate between alcohol abusers and normals have methodological flaws; none has measured concurrently the specificity and sensitivity and so the accuracy of AST as a marker is left in doubt.


An increase in the mean red cell corpuscular volume (MCV) has been reported in chronic alcoholics with or without liver disease (Wu, Chanarin and Levi, 1974; Morin and Porte, 1976; Carney and Sheffield, 1980), and has been associated with high alcohol consumption (Unger and Johnson, 1974; Wu et al., 1974; Whitehead et al, 1978; Whitfield, Hensley, Bryden and Gallagher, 1978; Eschwege, Papoz and Lellouch, 1978; Unger and Johnson, 1974; Chalmers and Chanarin, 1980; Bagrel, D'Houtaud and Gueguen, 1979; Papoz, Warnet, Pequignot, Eschweage, Claude and Schwartz, 1981; Chick et al., 1981). However, the interpretation of these studies is subject to a number of limitations.

In some the base population is unspecified, (e.g. Whitehead et al., 1978; Whitfield et al., 1978), the number of heavy drinkers has either been very small (e.g. Whitfield et al, 1978) or unspecified (Whiteheld et al., 1978; Eschwege et al., 1978; Unger and Johnson, 1974; Chalmers et al., 1980). Usually, the reported relationship between raised $\mathbb{M C V}$ and smoking (Eschwege et al., 1978) and age and sex (Whitiield et al., 1978) has been ignored. The mechanism for macrocytosis is poorly understood (Mistilis and Barr, 1981) and generally all studies conclude that while positive relationships can be found between raised $M C V$ and alcohol consumption, the lack of the sensitivity of MCV makes it a poor marker.

Recently there have been attempts to use quantitative procedures to combine laboratory tests to increase their power to differentiate normals and alcoholics. papoz et al. (1981) report multivariate relationships between alcohol consumption, GGT levels, MCV, and tobacco use, and indicate that a combination of GGT and MCV enabled them to identify 75 percent of self-reported heavy-drinking men (more than $80 g$ of pure alcohol daily). This approach has been supported by Eckardt et al. (1981) who used a quadratic discriminant function which included $M C V, G G T$, and $A S T$. Their function correctly classified 100 percent of 130 male non-alcoholic outpatients and 98 percent of 121 medically documented male alcoholics.

Earlier attempts by other investigators to use multivariate techniques have not resulted in a useful clinical application (e.g. Burbank, 1969; Croft, 1972), possibly because of poor design and the dichotomisation of test results into normal or abnormal. The results of Eckardt et al. (1981) and cited in Ryback et al. (1982) are almost too good to be true. However, their study is well designed and replication of their methods could draw attention to the possible usefulness of a combination of laboratory markers.

Other laboratory markers which have appeared in the literature include: Plasma-amino-buteric-acid/leucine ratio (e.g. Shaw and Lieber, 1982, 1980; Herrington, Jacobson, Daley, Lipo, Biller and Weissgerber 1981; Lieber, Shaw and Van Wacs, 1978); uric, folic and lactic acids (Drum, Goldman and Janowski, 1981; Lieber, Jones, Losowski and Davidson,
1962); decreased levels of magnesium, calcium and phosphate (e.g. Stendig-Lindberg, 1974; Knochel, 1977); decreased iron and blood sugar levels (e.g. Powell, 1966; Lindenbaum and Lieber, 1969; Freinkel, Arky and Singer, 1965); raised serum concentrations of triglycerides and high density lipoprotein cholesterol (e.g. Lieber, Spritz and DeCarli, 1966; Chait, Mancini, February and Lewis, 1972; Lieber, 1973; Nikkila and Taskinen, 1978); changes in numerous hematologic tests (e. g. Jandl, 1955; Westerman, Balcerzac and Heinle, 1968; McFarland and Libre, 1963; Lindenbaum, 1968; Walls and Losowsky, 1971; Smith, Lonergan and Sterling, 1964; Wu et al., 1974); urine-alcohol, blood-alcohol, breath-alcohol, and saliva and sweat-alcohol (e.g. Hamlyn, Brown, Sherlock and Brown, 1975; Orrego, Kalant, Israel, Blake, Medine, Rankin, Armstrong and Capur, 1979; Wechsler, Kasey, Thum and Demone, 1969; McCall, Whiting, Moore, and Goldberg, 1979); and abnormal plasma transferrin and salsolinol levels (Stibler, Sydow and Borg, 1980; Collins, Nijm, Borge, Teas and Goldfarb, 1979).

Although there have been a number of reviews on the detection of alcohol abuse (Wilkins, 1974; Murray, 1977; Jacobson, 1976; Miller, 1976; Holt et al., 1981; Skinner, Holt and Israel, 1981), only one (Holt et al., 1981) has focused on physical symptoms associated with both its early and late clinical manifestations. The major areas where the symptoms occur are in the general appearance, the mouth, the gastrointestinal and genitourinary tracts, the face skin and hands, the cardiovascular and respiratory systems and the central nervous system. Like laboratory markers, most physical symptoms are not specific or sensitive enough to be useful measures. Those which are, become obvious only when
chronic alcohol dependence is well-established. Some of the symptoms which have been suggested as useful markers include: alcoholic jaundice (Sherlock, 1975), acute and chronic pancreatitis (Benjamin, Imrie and Blumgart, 1977); Dupuytren's contracture ( $S$ u and Patek, 1970); spider nevi (Bean, 1959; Brauerman, 1970); and alcoholic cirrhosis and its precursors (e.g. Bhathal, bilkinson, Clifton, Rankin and Santamaria, 1975; Rankin, Orrego-Matte, Deschenes, Medline and Findlay, 1978).

It has been suggested that a composite index of medical signs in alcohol abuse may provide greater diagnostic accuracy than any single sign (Sher, 1977), but apart from that already outlined using laboratory markers, this suggestion has not been put into practice.

## Summary of Biomedical Measures

The majority of laboratory tests used for diagnosing alcohol abuse are relatively non-specific, and the only true indicator of alcohol consumption is the detection of alcohol in a patient's body rluids. However, the relatively short half-1ife of these compounds and the fact that their presence alone has not been shown to predict the patient's drinking habits or the degree of tolerance, limits their use.

False positives are frequently produced by diseases not related to alcohol and even the most speciric indicators are useful in a relatively small proportion of alcoholics. Given that the severity of liver disease is proportional to the
number of abnormal laboratory markers (Rankin et al., 1978; Orrego et al., 1979) many of the symptoms of liver disease will be sensitive only at the stage when other behavioural and physical signs are obvious.

However, laboratory markers may provide objective information to complement interview data and to confront patients who are denying alcohol abuse, although it must be remembered that there are nospecific biomedical tests. Holt et al. (1981) perhaps best summarized current knowledge:

```
Incomplete knowledge of the sensitivity and
specificity of many of the laboratory tests used in
the detection of chronic excessive consumption
prevents a firm recommendation for the selection of
available diagnostic laboratory tests. (p.1289).
```


## 4. 4 COMBINED PSYCHOLOGICAL AND BIOMEDICAL MEASURES

A World Health organization (WHO) study group indicated that an important objective of future research on alcohol abuse is the

> development of methods for screening and early detection of alcohol-related disabilities, with correlation of questionnaire and laboratory methods, (Edwards et al., 1977, p. 100 ).

A search of the literature reveals only four attempts since 1977 to investigate combinations of psychological and biomedical measures:

In 1977 Feuerlein, Ringer, Kufner and Antons reported on the development of the Munich Alcoholism Test (MALT) which has both a medical and a psychological section. The medical section focuses on symptoms and includes several aboratory tests such as GGT. The psychological section has 24
self-report items relating to alcohol use, somatic complaints


#### Abstract

and social drinking problems. The original report on the MALT was in German and in its translation to English ( Fe uerlein, Ringer, Kuper and Antons, 1980) a number of important aspects of its development were completely omitted. The following discussion is based on a corrected translation (Elvy, 1981).


#### Abstract

A total score on the MALT is computed by summing the individual scores from the two parts to indicate suspected or definite problem drinking. There are seven items in the biomedical section and each is rated four points, although the criteria for scoring are not clearly stated. Each positive response in the psychological section is rated one point. The emphasis on the biomedical section (a possible score of 28 points for seven items compared with the psychological section where the possible score is 24 points for 24 items) is justified by the authors on the need for objectivity.


In a cross validation sample of 675 unselected patients, 201 of which were independently diagnosed by a physician as alcoholic, the MALT correctly identified 90 percent of the alcoholic patients, eight percent were judged to be suspected alcoholics, and two percent were not detected. None of the 474 non-alcoholics was incorrectly classified and the total MALT score correlated 0. 85 with the independent physician's judgement. To date, there has been only one published study using the MALT, using 106 males from the armed forces reporting to the medical officer for a suspected alcohol problem (Skinner, Holt, Allen and Hakonson, 1980).

Skinner et al. were able to compare the item responses of the military sample with those of the alcoholic and control samples of feuerlein et al. (1980) and conclude that the psychological section of the MALT forms a homogeneous scale with high internal consistency. Skinner et al. also conclude that the biomedical section of the MALT is relatively independent of the psychological section and that low scores on the biomedical section will be obtained when subjects are young and non-hospitalised.

More recently, Bernadt et al. (1982) compared the effectiveness of eight laboratory tests (mean cell volume, urate, cholesterol, high-density lipoproteins, alkaline phosphatase, AST, GGT, and glutamate dehydrogenase) and three screening tests (MAST, CAGE and the Reich) in a study to detect excessive drinking and alcohol dependence among 385 psychiatric patients. GGT, the best of the laboratory tests, detected only one third of those consuming more than 160 mg of ethanol per day and of those independently diagnosed as alcoholic.

Other laboratory markers correlated highly with reported consumption but the correlations were too low to make them useful. In contrast, the MAST, the CAGE, and the Reich GReich, Robins, Woodruff, Taibleson, Rich and Cunningham, 1975) interviews each identified nine out of ten alcoholics, and the CAGE and Reich interviews detected 93 percent and 98 percent of excessive drinkers respectively. The authors report that the interview was best at detecting those individuals defined as abnormal drinkers (more than 160 mg of ethanol per day). They did not, however, combine both
biomedical and psychological data for classirication purposes.

Kristenson and Trell (1982) used their own shortened version of the MAST (Mm-MAST) consisting of nine questions, in a comparison study with GGT involving 4350 middle-aged men. Using a cut-off point of two positive responses to the Mm-MAST, 66 percent of heavy drinkers, 73 percent of all registered alcoholics and 90 percent of not previously identified alcoholics were identified. GGT proved to be a poor marker for detecting the alcoholics, correctly derining only 35 percent. In combination, GGT and the Mm-MAST identified 82 percent of all registered alcoholics, and 97 percent of alcoholics who were registered in the period Collowing the screening.

The authors conclude that the Mm-MAST in combination with biochemical tests is a useful screening instrument. However, this study is full of methodological flaws, for example: only half of the registered alcoholics answered the questionnaire; the Mm-MAST has no empirical validation or derivation; the classification for heavy drinking was not given; and GGT values were used to identiry the alcoholics in the study who were not previously identiried. The same rlaws are even more apparent in another report (Peterson, Trell and Kristenson, 1983).

## 4. 5 OTHER MEASURES

The advent of computers has shortened many complex and time-consuming tasks. Several authors have recently attempted to use computers to assist in the screening and diagnosis of alcohol dependence. The few reports in the literature of computer-assisted tests have employed lengthy questionnaires in their program development (e.g. Alcohol History Form of Gulliksen, 1950). Evenson, Altman, Won Cho and Montgomery (1973) developed an interactive program on data collected from 1023 alcoholics responding to the Alcohol History Form (which has 157 variables). Since the base line of the severity scale they developed used in-patient alcoholics, it is not surprising that "... far fewer items are reliably related to the severity continuum." (p. 1340).

However, their severity scale has been adopted as part of a statewide data collection system (Sletten and Evenson, 1972).

Reich et al. (1975) were the first authors to use a multivariate sequential analysis strategy employing part-exit models (Sonquist and Morgan, 1970) for screening purposes. In this model 900 diagnostic items are assessed and their inter-relationships computed, with various exit-paths depending on earlier responses. The authors compared the results from the computer-based interview on 259 hospitalised patients who also had complete diagnostic interviews. The interviews agreed in 91 percent of cases, which is not surprising since there were 227 alcoholics. The authors also randomly selected 100 psychiatric in-patients and each patient was separately given a computer and a clinician's diagnosis. The overall concordance in responses was 89
percent with 27 percent detected as alcoholic. Later, Costello and Baillargeon (1978) replicated the study and found an 84 percent concordance between a clinical diagnosis and the computer interview for 57 alcoholic patients. They concluded that the screening inventory appeared to be an efficient instrument and recommended its further use, although it may lead to under-diagnosis, especially with alcoholics who are schizophrenic.

In an attempt to diagnose alcoholics using the full National Council on Alcoholism Criteria (1972), Lyons and Izadi (1980) developed a computer algorithm from the data on 120 alcoholics in treatment and 80 non-alcoholic general hospital patients. A five-category classification scheme was developed (non-alcoholics, potential problem drinkers, behaviourally-impaired drinkers, physiologically-impaired drinkers, alcoholics) which correctly diagnosed all of the 120 alcoholics and 65 percent of the 80 non-alcoholics. When the procedure was adjusted to produce a diagnosis of only alcoholic or non-alcoholic, all of the alcoholics and 85 percent of the non-alcoholics were classified correctly. So far, Lyons and Izadi are the only authors who have attempted rigorously to incorporate standard classification criteria into a computer-aided diagnosis.

More recently, Beresford, Low, Adduci and Goggans (1982) have presented a seven-item biochemical and hematologic profile which, when used as a computerised linear discriminate analysis, correctly identified 79 percent of 30 in-patient alcoholics and 80 percent of 66 in-patient non-alcoholics, where both groups were previously determined
by clinical interviews. The computer profile diagnosed 29 percent of the total sample as alcoholic, while the clinical interviews, which the authors felt were more reliable, detected correctly in 30 percent of the sample. The authors decided that the biochemical profile lacked sensitivity but did recognise patients in the early to middle stages of dependence.

All the cited computer-aided instruments have failed to report on the practical aspects of the procedures or to describe the program sufficiently well for interested others to know whether the program could be applied elsewhere. None reports how the information is gathered from respondents or whether the program is available for others to use. Another failing, that of clinical interviews to allocate patients to different experimental groups, cannot enhance the reliability of their results. Significant differences reported may in part be due to variability in the clinical interviews rather than the correct measurement of the underlying construct of interest.

There have been numerous other attempts to develop instruments which will distinguish alcoholics from normals. These include: breath and blood alcohol meters (e.g., Justin, 1979; Wilkins, 1974); dependence and tolerance instruments (e.g. Mello, 1972; Merry and Marks, 1969); galvanic skin response equipment (e.g. Coopersmith, 1964); memory dysCunction devices (e.g. Goodwin, 1971); operant analysie and unsuccessful attempts with neuropsychological tests (summarised in Miller, 1976).

## 4. 6 SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

This chapter has rocused on available scales which could be used to measure the construct of problem drinking. For the purpose of the review, the measures were divided into three broad categories; psychological measures, biomedical measures, and combinations of measures.

Any clinical instrument whose results may be added to other information to decide on a patient's treatment regime, should meet various statistical and ethical criteria. Test statistical criteria are well documented (e.g. Anastasi, 1976; Cronbach, 1970; Martuza, 1977) and should include reports on measures of validity, reliability and test utility. Wilson and Jungner (1968) outline criteria for screening tests which centre around the ethical considerations on the outcome of screening, such as the availability of acceptable treatment resources. In practice, it is doubtful whether any screening instrument for problem drinking could meet all criteria. Certainly no instrument has reported on all these aspects and usually the statistical evidence is sketchy and of unclear derivation. Despite the flaws, problem drinking instruments are widely accepted and used for both clinical and research purposes.

Psychological measures include seven scales developed from the MMPI, and a variety of scales which directly measure behavioural consequences of problem drinking.

The most cited MMPI scale is the MacAndrew and its revised


#### Abstract

version containing items from the MMPI scales of Holmes', Hampton's, and Hoyt and Sedlacek's. However, reviewers do not agree on how well the MMPI scales differentiate alcoholics from normals. The critics (e.g. Sutherland et al., 1950; Syme, 1957; Franks, 1970; Miller, 1976; Apfeldorf, 1974, 1981) have questioned the evidence that alcoholics do have personality traits unique to alcoholics and that the MMPI scales have usually been used on samples they were not designed for, while those supporting the scales (e.g. Barry, 1974; Williams, 1976) believe consistent findings have been reported centering around clusters of traits common to alcoholics. However, it is clear that the majority of authors do not support their usefulness as clinical instruments.


The Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST) and the CAGE have been the most used direct measures. Some of the criticism directed at the MMPI scales has also been directed at other measures: they have been used widely on samples they were not designed for; for example, the MAST was developed from the responses of male drinking drivers yet is often used in inpatient and outpatient settings. The $S A D Q$ and $S A D D$ are promising recent scales which focus on the Alcohol Dependence Syndrome.

While the search for a biomedical test for problem drinking has been extensive, the results have been consistently disappointing. One study (Holt et al., 1981) cites over 100 references on laboratory tests alone to diagnose alcohol abuse. These authors discuss over 200 possible physical signs which could be used to differentiate problem and


#### Abstract

non-problem drinkers, while others (Skinner et al., 1980; Bernadt et al., 1982; Reich et al., 1975; Eckardt etal., 1981; Feuerlein et al., 1979) have investigated combinations of psychological and biomedical measures, high-powered statistical functions of these measures, and computer models using over 900 diagnostic items. While biomedical measures have not been specific and sensitive enough to use, serum-gamma-glutamyl-transferase, asparatate-transferase and mean cell volume have received the most attention of those commonly available. The only validated instrument combining psychological and biomedical measures is the MALT (Feuerlein et al., 1980) which was developed for hospitalised problem drinkers. However, the medical section of the MALT is long and difficult to interpret, which restricts its use.


There are a number of conclusions which can be drawn from this literature review.

First, with the exception of recent alcohol dependency tests, the instruments do not have a sound theoretical framework which determines what the test is actually measuring. It seems that the majority of tests were implicitly employing Jellinek's disease model. The evidence cited suggests that this model is no longer plausible.

Second, it is difficult to decide with many of the tests whether they were designed to detect, diagnose or screen for the target group. The MAST is clearly a screening test, while the authors of other tests report on their instruments' diagnostic abilities and generally leave the reader to decide on the usage.

The third conclusion is that often instruments are used to detect or diagnose a condition on populations for which they were not designed. While these tests may have utility on other populations, the effect of clinically labelling a patient on the basis of an invalidated measure can be serious.

Fourth, many of the well used instruments often have poor statistical or psychometric documentation. If these scales were required to meet the American Psychological Associations Standards for Educational and Psychological Tests, then it is doubtful whether any would be acceptable, yet they continue to be used as clinical and research instruments.

The last conclusion is that all tests focus on the measurement of the dependent problem drinking subconstruct (the alcoholics) although this is usually assumed rather than stated. There is no instrument which claims to measure the construct of problem drinking, as problem drinking was defined in Chapter 2. The next six chapters are about developing such a measure.

## CHAPTER FIVE

## THE DEVELOPMENT OF A TEST TO MEASURE THE CONSTRUCT OF PROBLEM DRINKING

## 5. 1 INTRODUCTION

The review from the previous chapter has shown that although there are many measures for detecting or diagnosing some aspects of problem drinking, few have received empirical validation and only two, the Alcohol Dependence Questionnaire (Stockwell et al., 1979) and the Alcohol Dependence Data Questionnaire (Raistrick et al., 1983), have made explicit reference to some underlying construct. Both of these tests have focussed their attention on dependent problem drinking, since alcohol dependence is the construct of interest. It is therefore $u n l i k e l y$ that these tests will differentiate between the non-dependent problem drinker and normals.

Given that the non-dependent problem drinker has a better prognosis of recovery than those dependent (Blume, 1983), then there is good reason to develop a test on an empirical basis, which will reliably distinguish between problem drinkers and normals. However, there are several statistical considerations which must be taken into account berore proceeding. It is vital to develop a test from a theoretical Eramework, which in this thesis, is to treat problem drinking as a construct. The choice of whether this test measures the construct of problem drinking for the purpose of diagnosis, screening or some other use, is
arbitrary. Once the decision has been made, however, then the instrument should be used solely for that purpose and applied only to the population for which it was developed.

General hospital patients have a high prevalence of dependent problem drinking (reviewed in McIntosh, 1982) and the hospital setting is excellent for the identification and treatment of this disorder (Lewis and Gordon, 1983). Therefore, it was decided to develop a screening test to measure the construct of problem drinking specifically in general hospital inpatients. The generally low frequency with which clinicians recognise dependent and particuarly non-dependent problem drinking influenced the decision to develop a screening test. Chapters six to ten and the remainder of this chapter are devoted to the development of this instrument.

## 5. 2 STATISTICAL CONSIDERATIONS OF TEST DEVELOPMENT

Sensitivity and non-specificity

Sensitivity is the prevalence of positive responses to a problem drinking measure in the target group, and non-specificity is the prevalence in the group without the condition. Thus false positives arise when the
non-specificity of a test is greater than zero, and false negatives arise when the sensitivity or a test is less than 100 percent. As Withy (1974) states:

The sensitivity of a screening test can be set at such a level that it always gives a positive result when disease is present ( 100 percent sensitivity, no false negatives), but this will inevitably be at the expense of loss of non-specificity due to the
selection of false positives.
This view is supported by Bernadt et al. (1982) who say that the primary requirement of a short test is that it should have a high sensitivity even at the expense of specificity. That is, it should detect a high proportion of genuine cases, even though this may result in some ralse positives. Alternatively, a test with a high degree of false negatives will be of little use if only a minority of the target group score on it. Murray (1977) suggests that one method of avoiding this sensitivity versus non-specificity dilemma is to use summary scores with a variety of cut-orf points indicating the severity of the disability.

## Reliability

The concept of test reliability has been used to cover several aspects of score consistency. In its broadest sense, Anastasi (1976) says:

> test reliability indicates the extent to which individual differences in test scores are attributable to true' differences in the characteristics under consideration and the extent to which they are attributable to chance errors. (p. 71 ).

Types of reliability include test-retest, alternate-form, split-half, Kuder-Richardson and scorer reliability. Any reliability correlation coefficient can be interpreted directly in terms of the percentage of score variance attributable to different sources. For example, a reliability coefficient of 0.85 signifies that 72 percent of the variance in test scores depends on true variance in the trait measured and 28 percent depends on error variance. The reliability coefficients which are generally reported for

```
tests are split-half (sometimes referred to internal
consistency) and test-retest estimates. Skinner et al.
(1981) state that more than 180 questionnaires have been used
in studies of drinking behaviour. Considering this number is
likely to have more than doubled since then, there have been
few reports of reliability on instruments designed to measure
some aspect of problem drinking. For instance, Bailey,
Haberman and Sheinberg (1966) administered a questionnaire to
subjects in New York in 1960-61 and then again three years
later; 25 of the 99 alcoholics identified in the first survey
were not identified in the second.
```

Summers (1970) interviewed 15 patients admitted to a treatment unit and Found that two weeks later 14 of them had changed their responses to 50 percent of the questions. Edwards, Hensman, Chandler and Peto (1973) reinterviewed 80 subjects after two to three months and reported that answers about drinking behaviour showed 70 percent reliability. Sobell, Sobell and Vanderspek (1979) found that the test-retest reliability of alcohol abusers self-reports of their daily drinking, alcohol-related incarcerations and their drinking problem history were highly reliable over a six week test interval $(R=0.97)$, although the athors are quick to point out the limits on the generalisability of the Eindings.

The World Health Organisation Expert Committee on Mental Health, Alcoholism Subcommittee (1952) argued that disguising the purpose of the interview would diminish the likelihood of a problem drinker denying symptoms, and therefore increase the reliability of the questionnaire. However, Edwards,

Chandler and Hensman (1972) and Plant (1977) both concluded that there was little significant difference when using disguised and undisguised questionnaires. More recently, Stockwell et al. (1983) administered the Severity of Alcohol Dependence Questionnaire (SADQ) to 45 subjects who were inpatients at alcohol treatment units. Each subject completed the SADQ twice with an interval of two weeks between tests. The test-retest correlation coerficient was 0.82 and all the individual test items had significantly similar responses.

Although apparently simple and straightforward, test-retest techniques present difficulties when applied to psychological tests for problem drinking. If the construct being measured is not stable over time, the choice of the interval between test and retest will substantially affect the correlation coefficient. Treatment effects are also likely to confound test-retest measures on self-report questionnaires; so there is a need to keep the time interval short. Anastasi (1976) suggests that for any type of instrument, the interval between test-retest should rarely exceed six months.

## Validity

Test validity is concerned with what the test measures and how well it does so (Anastasi, 1976). Procedures for determining test validity focus on the relationships between test performance and other independently observed facts about the behaviour characteristics under consideration. The procedures are numerous and have been described by various names. The standards for Educational and Psychological Test
and Manuals (1966) classifies these procedures under three main categories: content, criterion-related, and construct validity.

Criterion-related validity indicates the efrectiveness or a test in predicting an individual's behaviour in a specified situation, and so has little application for problem drinking tests. However, content validity, which determines whether the test content covers a representative sample of the behaviour domain to be measured, and construct validity, which is an assessment of the extent to which the test may be said to measure a theoretical construct or trait, are both appropriate procedures to use here.

The majority of current tests rely heavily on patients' self-reports, because many aspects of problem drinking can be observed only by the person affected. The validity of self-reported data is often a neglected area in the alcohol field by researchers. In an effort to avoid the sometimes tedious and expensive procedures necessary to validate tests, they frequently choose to ignore the issue of validity or else they acknowledge an acceptable level of invalidity in their data. In a review of self-reported alcohol problems, Midanik (1982) states:

```
For the most part, researchers who have approached
the issue of validity or self-reports in the
alcohol field have concentrated their efrorts on
discrepancies in the direction of under-reporting
(false negatives), and have thus tended to discount
the possibility of over-reporting behaviours by
attributing false positives to incorrect
measurement of the criterion. (p.357).
```

Closely aligned with validity issues is the notion that errors in reporting by patients will reflect their tendency
to deny the extent of their involvement with alcohol. Denial is seen as a defence mechanism or a conscious, deliberate manner of trying to deceive and evade specific issues (e.g. Moore and Murphy, 1961; Roizen, 1977). Gerard and Saenger (1966) suggest that because denial is an important feature in problem drinking models, patients will distort self-reported information. Hill and Blane (1967) noted that this makes evaluation based only on self-reports somewhat suspect.

Despite these widely held beliefs, numerous empirical studies indicate that most self-reports are valid (Sobell and Sobell, 1978; Sobell et al. 1975; Sobell, Sobell and Samuels, 1974; Cooper, Sobell, Masito and Sobell, 1980; Cooper, Sobell, Sobell and Maisto, 1981; Guze, Tuason, Stewart and picken, 1963; Bailey et al. 1966; McCrady, Paolino and Longabaugh, 1978; Miller, Crawford and Taylor, 1979; Maisto, Sobell and Sobell, 1979). These studies usually show little or no bias in self-reports, but they do reveal disagreements running in both directions, and so random errors may be present which serve to reduce observed correlations. However Polich (1982) says that such random errors may not cause bias in overall means and percentages.

Some studies have compared alcoholics reports of the amount drinking with a measure of blood-alcohol concentration (Armor, Polich and Stambul, 1978; Sobell et al. 1978, 1979; Jalazo, Steer and Fine, 1978). A11 of these studies found a tendency towards under-reporting. General population surveys provide other evidence that people under-report alcohol consumption by as much as 50 percent (Armor et al. 1978; Room, 1971; Casswell, 1979; Stacey and Elvy, 1981). These
studies, however, are measuring the self-report of alcohol consumption, which may contribute little useful information to a test.

While research substantiates the validity of most self-reports, Polich (1982) points out that the degree of validity depends on the type of behaviour assessed.

Instruments usually report a validity coefficient between the test score and some independent measure. These construct validity correlations should not be too high, since without added advantages such as brevity or ease of administration, then the test is no better than an independent measure (Anastasi, 1976).

To the author's knowledge, measures of content validity per se have not been reported for problem drinking tests.

Content validity is built into a test from the outset through the choice of appropriate items from the domain field. The fact that the content domain for problem drinking is not clearly established may partly explain the lack of such data. Generally, the reference to content validation is vague, such as:

The CAGE questions included... (Mayfield et al. 1974, p. 1121).

The MAST consists of 25 questions, many of which have also been used by other investigators in surveys of alcoholism. (Selzer, 1971, p.1653).

Items were selected to cover all stages in the development of alcoholism... (Hilton and Lokare, 1978, p.43).

The questionnaire was designed to have the following properties ... (Raistrick et al., 1983, p. 90).
orten, screening tests are assumed to be content valid (e.g.

Woodrurf et al., 1976; Manson, 1949a; Selzer et al., 1975), or are based on other tests with assumed content validity (e.g. Hampton, 1953; Holmes, 1953; Hoyt and Sedlacek, 1958; Atsaides et al., 1977; Bruder, 1982; Kalin, 1972; Skinner, 1982; Magruder-Habib et al., 1982).

Nearly all the validity coefficients reported are in fact measures of construct validity. The methods used are generally of two types: the Contrasted Groups Approach (Martuza, 1977, p151) in which the mean performance of the same measure on two contrasting groups should differ significantly; and Campbell and Fiske's (1959) multi-trait multi-method approach in which any two different measures of the same construct should have a high linear correlation and those measuring different constructs should have a low correlation.

## Utility

A test which is statistically valid and reliable tells us nothing about the relative value of the test over other less costly possible procedures. Mischel (1968) points out that there is little value in developing a lengthy, expensive test or inference process to generate descriptions or predictions which are readily available from cheaper concurrent sources. Also, test derived statements are trivial if they merely correspond to routinely available information. For example, testing for problem drinking amongst inpatient alcoholics would be of little use other than to provide therapeutic feedback.

Referring to the field of personality Mischel (1968) states that:

Test-derived personality descriptions are valuable to the extent that they provide significant increments in valid information over other less readily available or less economical sources. (p.104).

Mischel refers to this as "incremental validity". Much of what can be said about incremental validity for personality tests is also true for tests of problem drinking.

First, the incremental validity of a test depends on the degree to which it adds to information available from the base rates for the appropriate population. For example, if 95 percent of inpatients at a treatment centre were diagnosed alcohol dependent, a test which predicts this label correctly 80 percent of the time is less useful than calling every patient in the hospital alcohol dependent.

Second, simple self-ratings may sometimes relate to the external criteria as well as, and often better than, more sophisticated complex tests designed to infer underlying theoretical constructs. For instance, Hase and Goldberg (1967) have shown that simple self-ratings are better predictors of how peers rate them than Gough's (1957) California Psycholigical Inventory. This same consideration is likely to apply to problem drinking where the majority of tests are short self-report questionnaires.

The third utility consideration relates to clinical judgement which may be shorter and cheaper than other measures.

However, there are doubts about the generality of clinical judgement across difeerent situations (Kerch, Crutcheield and

Ballachey, 1962), about the effects of clinical training and experience (Sarbin, Taft and Bailey, 960), and about the effects of the clinician's cognitive complexity (Bieri, Atkins, Briar, Leaman, Miller and Tripodi, 1966).

Fourth, the test should be suited to match the goal of the assessment. If a test is designed to screen for problem drinking, then it should not be used for diagnostic purposes. Labelling a patient alcohol dependent on the basis of a screening test score can have serious consequences in terms of treatment and patient self-esteem. It is likely that problem drinking tests currently being used are not serving the ends for which they were intended. Perhaps the best example of this is the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (Selzer, 1971) which has often been used as a diagnostic instrument (e.g. Moore, 1972; Skinner and Charalampous, 1978; Zung, 1978; Kaplan, Pokorny, Kanas and Lively, 1975).

Finally, the utility of a test depends on the time taken to complete the assessment and the confidence clinicians have in the results. Mischel (1968) says that the main purpose of tests is to supply the clinician with additional information to assist with a diagnosis. Little is gained when the administration of a test uses more time to obtain information than a skilled clinician would take to obtain the same information from a short interview.

Fortunately, the majority of problem drinking tests take less than 15 minutes to complete (e.g. Selzer, 1971; Bailey et al., 1973; Mayfield et al., 1974), although some can take up
to three half-hour interviews (e.g. Knup fer, 1967).
However, short tests suffer from the lack of faith in their predictive ability, although this may not be a rault of the test but rather that clinicians show great diagnostic tenacity and adherence to their initial categories, largely ignoring new information (e.g. Rubin and Shontz, 1960 ; Wishner, 1960; Anderson, 1965). While short tests for problem drinking are rapid, Murray (1977) believes they have not been widely accepted because of doubts about the truthfulness of responses, a view supported by Midanik (1982).

## 5. 3 Nature of the Test

Given the enormous variety of drinking problems which are likely to be needed to cover the entire content domain of problem drinking, the logical process would be to develop a test which covers a sample of the domain. Providing measures of the sampled problems are above some predetermined criteria, then the information would alert the user to the possibility of alcohol problems. In terms of the problem drinking construct, this would be a matter of measuring a representative sample of subconstructs from the content domain. The purpose of such a test would clearly be for screening rather than for diagnostic purposes.

The procedure in the following experiments is: to select items representing the content domain of problem drinking; to write these items so that they fit Chapter three's definition of a subconstruct; to arrange the items so that collectively
they empirically measure the problem drinking construct; and finally to describe the psychometric and statistical properties of the instrument.

## CHAPTER SIX

## EXPERTMENT I: THE SELECTION OF PROBLEM DRINKING TEST ITEMS

## 6. 1 INTRODUCTION

The very process of selection means that there is some criterion which determines whether an item is included. The fact that in this experiment the test items are selected on their ability to differentiate between problem and non-problem drinkers, suggests that there is already some measure which determines problem and non-problem drinking. Unfortunately, this is not the case. Problem drinking scales summarised in Chapter four have not been validated on general hospital patients and they either measure alcohol dependence or claim to detect alcoholics. This does not mean that because there is no suitable criterion measure then the content domain of problem drinking cannot be defined. Rather, the problem of selecting items can be approached iteratively by successively evaluating the outcome, and making subsequent changes in the measurement as a result. However, any iterative process needs to begin with a measure Which in some way approximates the expected result.

In the first experiment the Munich Alcoholism Screening Test (MALT) (feuerlein et al., 1980) was used in a combination of other markers to provide a pool of possible test items representing the content domain of problem drinking, and the Short MAST (Selzer et al., 1975) was the initial criterion

## FIGURE 10

General Design for Experiment I

Select a pool of test items representing the content domain
$\downarrow$
Write items to suit the model framework
$\downarrow$

Design and test the questionnaire format
$V$

Empirically choose test i.tems, weightings and cut-off score
$\downarrow$

Describe psychometric properties of test

FIGURE 11
Screening Out Criteria for Experiment I

| Measure | Criteria |
| :--- | :--- |
| Will you take part? | No |
| Do you drink? | No |
| When did you last drink? | Never |
| Quantity-frequency measure <br> (mls ethanol per day) <br> SMAST score | Average <3 for males <br> and females <br> Score of 0 |

measure. The Short MAST (SMAST) was chosen because it was designed as a screening test, albeit for male alcoholic drivers, and it has received the most scrutiny and clinical application of all screening tests. The SMAST has also been used extensively for general hospital prevalence studies (summarised in McIntosh (1982)).

The test items in this study are, by definition, subconstructs of problem drinking and it is assumed that there may be interactions between these subconstructs. In this case the relationship between test items and total score reduces to the simple mathematical expression described by equation 4 in Appendix $B$.

## 6. 2 METHOD

Design
In order to avoid the difficulties which generally arise when problem drinkers are compared with healthy controls (Feuerlein et al., 1980), both groups were patients in the general hospital. It was estimated that about 80 percent of patients would be non-problem drinkers, and since all patients needed to be interviewed to obtain the samples of interest, a number of special design features or phases were employed to determine which patient could be excluded from full interviews, since it was considered unethical and impractical to subject all patients to every question.

The general design for experiment $I$ is given in Figure 10.

Eirst, a pool of trial test items was selected which were thought to represent the content domain of problem drinking. These items included the twenty-seven MALT self-report questions and a further thirty-two psychological and biomedical markers commonly associated with alcohol abuse (see Appendix C). These markers were obtained following an extensive review of the literature. When discussing the derivation of the twenty-seven MALT items feuerlein et al. state:
roughly 250 diagnostically relevant items were
selected from the extensive literature on
alcoholismand, withatotal of 1335 patients were
evaluated inthree separate phases for their
ability to differentiate. (1980, p. 137$).$

The second step was to ensure that the test items were subconstructs and that their measurement was possible on a bipolar scale. Since there were a large number of items and the desired result was a screening test with simplicity and fast administration, the test scales were chosen as "yes" or "no" for the psychological measures, and "present" or "absent" for the biomedical measures.

The next step in the design was to construct a questionnaire Sormat which reliably excluded non-drinking and light-drinking patients from further questioning. This problem presented some difficulty since the author was not able to $\boldsymbol{t i n d}$ any documented method for selecting target patients from an unselected population. Obviously patients who did not drink could not be current problem drinkers, but even this assumption had to be tested. For example, asking a patient "Do you drink?" may elicit a response of "no", but by asking "When did you last drink?" the same patient may say "last week". A number of assumptions such as this were
assessed in six consecutive experimental phases during the data collection. These phases were designed to answer the following questions:

1. In order to screen out non-drinkers, is there a difference between asking "Do you drink?" and "When did you last drink?"
2. Are non-drinkers likely to score positive responses to any trial test items?
3. Are patients screened out on the basis of low quantity-frequency measures likely to score positively on trial test items?
4. How many patients scoring less than the SMAST criterion measure will score positively on trial items?
5. Will any combination of the screening out criteria affect the likelihood of positive responses on trial items?

Depending on the phase, there were five possible screening out points. These five questions and their screening out criteria are given in Figure 11.

A quantity-frequency measure was obtained by asking patients to recall how much they would drink ${ }_{\text {an }}$ an average drinking occasion in terms of the number and type of each drink they would have, such as one large glass of beer, three jugs of beer, two nips of spirits, etc. These measures were then converted into millilitres of ethanol to produce an average

## FIGURE 12

Screening Out Questions
Used in Experiment I

| Question | Phase |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| Will you take part? | ** | ** | ** | ** | * * | ** |
| Do you drink? | ** | ** | * | * | * | * |
| When did you last drink? | * | * | ** | *** | *** | ** |
| Quantity-frequency score | ** | ** | * | *** | *** | * |
| SMAST | ** | * | ** | ** | * | * |
| * Measure not used |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ** Screening | ut | ite | a |  |  |  |
| *** Measure tak |  | at | u | for | cree | ng |

FIGURE 13

$$
\text { To Derive } \frac{\text { Steps and Analyses }}{\text { Test Items for Experiment I }}
$$

| Step | Analysis used |
| :--- | :--- |
| 1. Select test items from |  |
| pool of trial items |  |\(\left.\quad \begin{array}{l}Non-specificity, sensitivity and <br>

likelihood ratios. Stepwise <br>
regression and correlation <br>
analysis\end{array}\right]\)
quantity. Patients were also asked to recall the average time between drinking occasions and this and the quantity measure were then converted during the course of the interview into a measure as millilitres of ethanol per half day. It was decided that any male or female patient of any age drinking less than three millilitres of ethanol per half day (less than one nip per day) on an average drinking occasion was unlikely to experience problems with alcohol. This was the quantity-frequency screening out criteria.

The specific screening out criteria used in each phase are given in Figure 12. These criteria were incorporated into the final questionnaire (Appendis C).

The next design feature (Figure 10) was to derive the test items, weightings and test cut-off score.

It was estimated that at least 1500 patients would need to be interviewed in order to obtain useful data which would enable the statistical discrimination of the trial items. Some calculations were required in order to match resources needed for data collection with likely patient numbers, bearing in mind that all non-paediatric consecutive admissions would be interviewed (see Appendix D for these calculations).

The selection of the final test items required a number of steps and analyses, described in Figure 13.

First, items were selected from the pool of trial items. At this stage all patients were classified into two groups: problem drinkers were those whose SMAST score was one or
more; and non-problem drinkers those with a SMAST score of zero. While Selzer et al. (1975) suggest that an SMAST score of two or more is needed for a classification of possibly to definitely alcoholic, this criterion was lowered in this experiment to a score of one or more because in this author's opinion a classification of possibly alcoholic is suggestive of alcohol dependence, and since the objective in the experiment was to design a screening measure which detects both dependent and non-dependent patients, the SMAST criterion cut-off score needs to be lowered. Also, an examination of these questions (questions 10 to 22, Appendix C) shows that a positive response to any one of these items (representing a score of one) could indicate a problem with alcohol.

Data collected on patients were of three types: self-report obtained by interview (Q1 to Q44, Appendix C); data from physical examination and blood testing (blood tests, Appendix C) ; and biomedical data from examining the patients ward notes (history, Appendix C). Since not all this data were able to be obtained on each patient, the sample sizes varied. For example, full self-report data which were independent on any previous selection criteria, were obtained on only 537 of the 1613 patients interviewed, while data from the ward notes were obtained from 1578 patients.

To select the items which best differentiated between the problem and non-problem drinking groups, a number of statistical procedures were used (Figure 13). First, the percentage of positive responses to a given item were determined for the problem and non-problem drinking groups to
provide measures of sensitivity (the prevalence of positive responses for a given item in the problem drinking group) and non-specificity (the prevalence in the non-problem drinking group). Second, a likelihood ratio for each item was calculated as the ratio of sensitivity to non-specificity. An item was excluded from the selection unless the sensitivity was five percent or moreand the likelihood ratio was one or more. Third, each item was correlated with the SMAST groups to confirm its selection and a linear stepwise regression was used to predict the SMAST groups from the selected self-report items. The prediction equation coefficients from this regression are the $t$ values from the mathematical equation 4 in Appendix $B$.

The second major step in deriving items (Figure 13) was to check that selected items were representative of the problem drinking content domain, consistent with the definition of a subconstruct, and that the total measure had items which were largely internally and externally perceived.

In the next step patients were divided into problem drinking and control groups. While problem drinkers were the same group as before, controls needed a SMAST score of 0 (the criteria for non-problem drinkers) and no evidence in their ward notes of alcohol problems. In addition, men and women in the control group had to be drinkers but to report drinking less than 35 mls and 15 mls of pure alcohol per week respectively (about the equivalent of $t w o$ glasses and one glass of wine).

This additional requirement for non-problem drinkers to be classified controls was to ensure that controls did drink,
but without problems. The determination of these two groups was essential for the next step.

The fourth step was to weight the selected items to obtain the maximum differentiation between problem drinking and control groups, and to find a cut-off measure of the construct which would suggest problem drinking. While the obvious weightings were those derived from the regression analysis, these weightings would be difficult to sum in practice without an electronic calculator. Therefore, various trial weightings were used which approximated the regression coefficients. Cut-off scores were determined separately for self-report items and self-report plus physicians' items.

The final step in this experiment was to describe the factor structure of the test, how the individual items correlated with each other, and how the total test related to the SMAST.

## Setting

All data were collected from admissions to 14 wards at a general hospital in Christchurch between June and November, 1981. The Hospital serves a population of about 350,000 and in the year ending 31 March 1982, the wards in which

Experiment $I$ was conducted had admitted a total of 10,048 patients (The North Canterbury Hospital Board Annual Report, 1981/1982). Patients were admitted to hospital through its Accident and Emergency Department to wards taking turns at being "on acute", and were also admitted through GP referrals and transfers from other hospitals and wards. These latter
patients were termed "arranged and waiting list admissions".

Patient interviews were conducted at the bedside in the ward. These were frequently difricult to arrange since if a patient was well enough to be interviewed, then they were usually well enough to be discharged. That is, the majority of patients were either acutely ill, recovering from or going to be operated on, connected to various apparatus which made the access to patients difficult, under medical examination by nursing or medical staff, being visited by friends and relatives, or simply being too old or sick to understand what was being said. The interviewers needed to be sensitive to all of these issues, and sometimes up to four repeated visits to patients were required before the interview was complete. Also, patients were usually in cubicles with about four other beds, making it difficult for a conversation not to be overheard by others.

There were two other aspects about the setting worth noting: First, the interview load was unpredictable. When a ward was "on acute" patients were being admitted and discharged much quicker than normal, and the interviewers had to ensure that each patient had been accounted for. Second, interviewing in such a setting was stressful for the interviewers. These stresses came from the rigorous demands from the normal ward routine, from the sometimes distressing physical appearance of patients, and from the patients' expressions of their anxiety about their condition and its associated problems to a sympathetic listener.

## Subjects

```
Al1 subjects were non-paediatric (over the age of 15 years)
consecutive admissions to hospital. The age, sex, marital
status and ward distribution of subjects are given in
Appendix E (Tables I and II). Of the 2163 patients
approached, full data were collected on 1613. Reasons for
non-response included 50 rerusals (2 percent) and 351
incomplete interviews (16 percent) resulting from early
discharge or self-discharge before full data were obtained,
illness or undergoing medical attention, or too old to
comprehend an interview.
```


## Procedure

Each day (excluding weekends) the admission list for the previous day was obtained from the orderlies' office. This list indicated the patient's name and the ward to which they had been admitted. From the research office in the hospital, the six interviewers then noted the names of the patients in the wards which the interviewers had been allocated. The patient list frequently contained over 100 names each day, and the interviewers were rotated on monthly basis to each of the 14 wards, although the interviewers often had to assist each other on different wards depending on which wards were acute. The interviewers then attempted to locate the patient and arrange an interview, carefully noting whether an interview had been completed or not, since sometimes interviews were not finished until at least four days after admission. The interviewers also read the patient's ward notes to obtain other non-interview data.
the liver function tests in this experiment, and because physical examination data would sometimes not be recorded by the medical staff in the ward notes, an attempt was made to increase the chances of obtaining this data by inserting a form, coloured pink for attention ("Attention Resident Medical officer", Appendix C) at the front of the ward notes por the medical staff to complete. This form was inserted in every patient's notes by starf in the admitting office.

The most difficult task was collecting data from the ward notes, since there was no consistency about when the medical staff would make an entry. The interviewers therefore had to go back repeatedly until data had been recorded, or until four days had lapsed from the date of admission, in which case the data were reported as missing. Given that after four days one interviewer may have conducted 30 to 40 interviews, an accurate record system was essential. Once the interview was considered complete, a patient number was given to the interview schedule and bundles of about 200 at a time were taken for computer punching.

At 8.30 a.m, each morning, the author met with the interview staff to discuss progress and any problems arising through interviewing. Sometimes this resulted in the author visiting the patient to determine whether a referral should be made Ror psychiatric assessment or treatment for alcohol dependence. It was at this meeting where new experimental phases were introduced, discussed, and the interviewers practised the new schedule by interviewing each other.


#### Abstract

data collection, ensuring correct ethical procedures were being used, and in designing and checking questionnaires as the experiment progressed. Whenever an interviewer was sick or thought that an interview could be difficult, the author was the replacement. It was sometimes a major task to have the interview schedules ready at the change of each phase, since the new design depended on the outcome of earlier designs, although in practice this usually meant changing the style of data collection rather than changing the questionnaire. The co-ordination also meant that the right number of clipboards, badges, questionnaires, etc. had to be constantly updated. As the experiment progressed, the cumulative stress on the interviewers became apparent, and it was necessary to give substantial time in encouraging and supporting them.


## Trials and Interviewer Training

Six workers from the Labour Department Project Employment Program assisted with the data collection. Five of the six had completed university degrees, including two at the masters level. Five were women, and all six were single. The average age was 22.7 years, with an age range of 21 to 25 years. At the beginning all six underwent a two week intensive orientation program which included visits to local treatment agencies, talks with alcohol professionals, reading and discussing relevant literature, and an introduction to hospital wards and medical staff.

In order to be Eamiliar with interviewing techniques and the questionnaire, each completed trial interviews in the hospital wards for three days, involving 149 patients all

TABLE 1
Trials, Incompletes and Refusals for Experiment 1

| PhasePossible <br> Patients | Incomplete | Refusals | Total <br> Interviewed |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 394 | 5 | 17 | 372 |
| 2 | 284 | 7 | 7 | 270 |
| 3 | 374 | 79 | 5 | 290 |
| 4 | 590 | 199 | 163 | 13 |

Structure of Phases in Experiment I

together. At the end of each day the author and interviewers met to discuss problems and ambiguity with the questionnaire; any difficult parts were edited. (For the final questionnaire adopted see Appendix $C$ ).

Naming the Instrument
Once the final items had been selected from the pool of trial items it was decided to give the collection of items a name. Because the instrument was being designed to measure the construct of problem drinking, and because its use was to be for screening purposes only, the choice of the name for this thesis was the Problem Drinking Screening Test or PDST. (The Alcohol Research Advisory Group of the North Canterbury Hospital Board preferred for its purposes to name it the Canterbury Alcoholism Screening Test (CAST). See Elvy and Wells (1984)).

## 6. 3 RESULTS

The raw data and SPSS computer program (Nie, Hull, Jenkins, Steinbrenner and Brent, 1957) for analysing it are given in Appendix $C$.

APPROACH FORMAT
The number of incomplete interviews, refusals, and patients on which full data were collected for each phase are given in Tables 1 and 2. In Table 2 the branch structure indicates the number of patients continuing with the interview, and the dotted line indicates the termination of the interview because of cut-out criteria. For example, in

| PHASES | MEASURE | RESPONSES | $x^{2}$ | d. f. | Sig. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| All | Will you take part) (Q1) | Yes, No | 4.50 | 5 | NS |
| 1,2 | Do you drink? $(Q 3)$ | Yes, No | 0.47 | 1 | NS |
| 3 to 6 | When did you last drink? <br> (Q4) | Never, other | 23.57 | 3 | p<. 001 |
| All | Phase 1,2 with phases 3 to 6 | 'no' to Q3 <br> 'never' to Q4 | 12.19 | 1 | p<. 01 |
| 1,2 | Cut-off criteria | QF> $/ C, Q F<C$ | 8.92 | 1 | $p<.01$ |
| 3 to 6 | Cut-off criteria | QF>/C, QF<C | 2.74 | 1 | NS |
| All | Phases 1,2 with phases 3 to 6 | QF> $/ C, Q F<C$ | 2.74 | 1 | NS |
| 1,2 | SMAST score | $\begin{aligned} & \text { score >0 } \\ & \text { score }=0 \end{aligned}$ | 0.76 | 1 | NS |
| 3 to 6 | SMAST score | $\begin{aligned} & \text { score }>0 \\ & \text { score }=0 \end{aligned}$ | 3.34 | 3 | NS |
| All | SMAST score | $\begin{aligned} & \text { score }>0 \\ & \text { score }=0 \end{aligned}$ | 2.49 | 1 | NS |
| 2,5,6 | SMAST score >0 | score on trial questions |  |  |  |
|  | SMAST score $=0$ | no score | 277.60 | 1 | p<. 001 |


#### Abstract

phase 1: 389 patients were interviewed (included 17 refusals); 275 said they did drink and 97 interviews were terminated because they said they did not drink; 148 patients scored higher than the quantity-frequency cut-orf criteria; and 19 patients scored more than $\theta$ on the SMAST and so continued with the trial questions. In phases 4 and 5, even When patients said "never" to the question "When did you last drink?", the interviews were still continued. Thus it can be observed that only in phases 2,5 and 6 were the trial questions given independent of the SMAST score.


The effects of the different approaches taken between phases were tested by Chi-square significance testing (Table 3). To summarise:
(1) There were no significant differences between phases on the numbers taking part.
(2) There was a significant difference $\left(X^{2}=12.19, p<0.01\right)$ between asking "Do you drink?" and asking "When did you last drink?", with probabilities of $p=0.73$ and $p=0.80$ of positive responses respectively. There was also a significant difference to the "never" versus other types of responses (see questionnaire, Appendix C) to the question "When did you last drink?" between phases 3 to 6 where this questicn was asked.

The responses in (2) did not significantly affect the quantity-rrequency cut-out rates. However, these cut-out rates did vary significantly between all phases.


#### Abstract

(4) The eut-out points taken in (1), (2) and (3) did not significantly affect the numbers scoring on the SMAST. (5) In phases 2, 5 and 6 the trial questions were given independently of the SMAST score. While there was an obvious relationship between the trial questions and SMAST score, 125 of the 489 patients ( 26 percent) scoring 0 on the SMAST did score on one or more of the trial questions.


The conclusions which can be drawn from the summary are:
(1) It is better to ask "When did you last drink?" rather than "Do you drink?".
(2) Patients cut-out prior to the quantity-frequency measure and SMAST items would not score significantly above criteria on these measures.
(3) A significant number of patients scoring 0 on the SMAST did score one or more positive responses on the trial questions. For this reason, any subsequent analyses on the trial questions could include patients from only phases 2, 5 and 6 where trial questions were given independent of SMAST scores.

Thus the approach format for the instrument should include the question "When did you last drink?" and also the quantity-frequency screening out measures.

Distribution of Self-Reported Quantity-Frequency Measures

|  | Yotal | 0-30 |  | 31-40 |  | 41-50 |  | Average$51-60$ |  | mls ethan$61-70$ |  | nol/week$71-80$ |  | 81-90 |  | 90+ |  | Above Criterion* |  | Below Criterion |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $N$ | $\%$ | N | $\%$ | N | $\%$ | N | $\%$ | N | $\%$ | N | \% | $N$ | $\%$ | N | $\%$ | N | $\%$ | N | $\%$ |
| Men: |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Total | 856 | 420 | 49.1 | 126 | 14.7 | 20 | 2.3 | 61 | 7.1 | 5 | 0.6 | 85 | 9.9 | 13 | 1.5 | 126 | 14.7 | 224 | 26.1 | 632 | 73.9 |
| Non-specificity | 762 | 408 | 53.5 | 115 | 15.1 | 19 | 2.5 | 57 | 7.5 | 5 | 0.7 | 69 | 9.1 | 11 | 1.4 | 78 | 10.2 | 158 | 20.7 | 604 | 79.3 |
| Sensitivity | 94 | 12 | 12.8 | 11 | 11.7 | 1 | 1.1 | 4 | 4.3 | 0 | 0.0 | 16 | 17.0 | 2 | 2.1 | 48 | 51.1 | 66 | 70.2 | 28 | 29.8 |
| Women: |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Total | 746 | 571 | 76.5 | 87 | 11.7 | 17 | 2.3 | 27 | 3.6 | 1 | 0.1 | 17 | 2.3 | 2 | 0.3 | 24 | 3.2 | 175 | 23.5 | 571 | 76.5 |
| Non-specificity | 724 | 567 | 78.3 | 85 | 11.7 | 16 | 2.2 | 20 | 2.8 | 1 | 0.1 | 16 | 2.2 | 2 | 0.3 | 17 | 2.3 | 148 | 20.4 | 576 | 79.6 |
| Sensitivity | 22 | 4 | 18.2 | 22 | 9.1 | 1 | 4.5 | 7 | 31.8 | 1 | 4.5 | 1 | 4.5 | 0 | 0.0 | 7 | 31.8 | 18 | 81.8 | 4 | 18.2 |

Between sexes, $x^{2}=1.57, p>0.1$ on criterion measures
*Criterion: Men elevated $>70 \mathrm{mls}$ ethanol/week
Women elevated $>30 \mathrm{mls}$ ethanol/week

## TABLE 5

Prevalence Positive, Sensitivity, Non-Specificity and Likelihood Ratios for Trial Self-Report Questions (N=537)

| $\text { Question }{ }^{1}$ | Prevalence N | positive \% | Non-specificity ( $\mathrm{N}=489$ ) |  | Sensitivity ( $N=48$ ) |  | Likelihood Ratio |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | N | $\%$ | N | $\%$ |  |
| 23 | 37 | 5.0 | 15 | 3.0 | 12 | 25.0 | 8.33 |
| 24 | 42 | 7.8 | 24 | 5.0 | 18 | 37.5 | 7.50 |
| 25 | 14 | 2.6 | 7 | 1.5 | 7 | 14.6 | 9.73 |
| $26 *$ | 3 | 0.6 | 2 | 0.2 | 1 | 2.1 | 10.50 |
| 27 | 25 | 4.7 | 17 | 3.5 | 8 | 16.7 | 4.77 |
| 28 | 65 | 12.1 | 37 | 7.6 | 28 | 58.3 | 7.67 |
| 29 | 8 | 1.5 | 4 | 0.9 | 4 | 8.3 | 9.22 |
| 30 | 31 | 5.8 | 17 | 3.2 | 15 | 31.3 | 9.76 |
| 31 | 43 | 8.0 | 24 | 5.0 | 19 | 39.6 | 7.92 |
| 32 | 17 | 3.2 | 9 | 1.7 | 9 | 18.8 | 11.10 |
| 33 | 11 | 2.0 | 7 | 1.3 | 5 | 10.4 | 8.00 |
| 34 | 30 | 5.6 | 15 | 3.0 | 15 | 31.3 | 10.40 |
| 35 | 25 | 4.7 | 13 | 2.6 | 12 | 25.0 | 9.62 |
| 36 | 37 | 6.9 | 24 | 5.0 | 13 | 27.1 | 5.42 |
| 37 | 41 | 7.6 | 23 | 4.8 | 18 | 37.5 | 7.81 |
| 38 | 20 | 3.7 | 10 | 2.0 | 10 | 20.8 | 10.40 |
| 39 | 43 | 8.0 | 23 | 4.7 | 20 | 41.7 | 8.87 |
| 40 | 34 | 6.3 | 18 | 3.7 | 16 | 33.3 | 9.00 |
| 41 | 18 | 3.4 | 9 | 1.9 | 9 | 18.8 | 9.89 |
| 42 | 51 | 9.5 | 30 | 6.1 | 21 | 43.8 | 7.18 |
|  | 31 | 5.8 | 17 | 3.4 | 14 | 29.2 | 8.59 |
| $8_{3}^{2}$ | 217 | 13.5 | 184 | 12.3 | 33 | 28.4 | 2.31 |
| $5_{3}^{3}$ men | 224 | 26.1 | 158 | 20.7 | 66 | 70.2 | 3.39 |
| $5^{3}$ women | 175 | 23.5 | 148 | 20.4 | 18 | 81.8 | 4.01 |

[^0]
## TABLE 6

Prevalence, Sensitivity, Non-Specificity and Likelihood Ratios for Elevated Liver Function Tests

| Test | Criteria for elevation | Prevalence |  |  | Non-Specificity |  |  | Sensitivity |  |  | Likelihood Ratio |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | N | elevated | \% | N | elevated | $\%$ | N | elevated | $\%$ |  |
| Phos | >120 IU/1 | 1135 | 196 | 16.3 | 1064 | 184 | 16.3 | 71 | 12 | 16.9 | 0.98 |
| AST** | $>50 \mathrm{IU} / 1$ | 1125 | 62 | 5.5 | 1054 | 54 | 5.1 | 71 | 8 | 11.3 | 2.19 |
| MCV | $>100 \mathrm{fl}$ | 1179 | 28 | 2.4 | 1103 | 26 | 2.4 | 76 | 2 | 2.6 | 1.12 |
| GGT* men | $>50 \mathrm{IU} / 1$ | 567 | 134 | 23.6 | 515 | 115 | 22.3 | 52 | 19 | 36.5 | 1.64 |
| GGT* women | $>35$ IU/1 | 500 | 117 | 23.4 | 490 | 114 | 23.3 | 10 | 3 | 30.0 | 1.29 |

* Indicates tests meeting selection criteria of likelihood ratio $>1$ and sensitivity $>5 \%$.

Prevalence, Sensitivity, Non-Specificity and Likelihood Ratios for Elevated Medical Examination Tests ( $\mathrm{N}=1578$ )

| Test | Prevalence elevated | $\begin{gathered} (\mathrm{N}=1578) \\ \% \end{gathered}$ | Non-specificity elevated | $\begin{aligned} & (N=1465) \\ & \% \end{aligned}$ | Sensitivity elevated | $\begin{gathered} (N=113) \\ \% \end{gathered}$ | Likelihood Ratio |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| T.B. | 27 | 1.7 | 23 | 1.6 | 4 | 2.7 | 1.69 |
| Peptic or bleeding ulcer | 20 | 1.3 | 15 | 1.0 | 5 | 4.4 | 1.10 |
| Pancreatitis | 5 | 0.3 | 4 | 0.3 | 1 | 0.0 | 0.03 |
| High blood pressure | 212 | 13.4 | 201 | 13.7 | 11 | 10.6 | 0.77 |
| Hepatitis | 19 | 1.2 | 18 | 1.2 | 1 | 1.8 | 1.50 |
| Jaundice | 28 | 1.8 | 28 | 1.9 | 0 | 0.0 | 0.00 |
| Liver disease | 7 | 0.4 | 4 | 0.3 | 3 | 1.8 | 6.00 |
| Pneumonia | 54 | 3.4 | 51 | 3.5 | 3 | 1.8 | 0.51 |
| Chronic bronchitis | 40 | 2.5 | 37 | 2.5 | 3 | 3.5 | 1.40 |
| Epilepsy | 24 | 1.5 | 22 | 1.4 | 2 | 3.5 | 2.50 |
| Memory disorders | 23 | 1.5 | 19 | 1.3 | 4 | 3.5 | 2.69 |
| Nutrition | 8 | 0.5 | 7 | 0.5 | 1 | 0.0 | 0.02 |
| Accidents ( $>1$ )* | 93 | 5.9 | 76 | 5.2 | 7 | 15.0 | 2.88 |
| Drug abuse | 8 | 0.5 | 4 | 0.3 | 4 | 3.5 | 11.67 |
| Peripheral neuritis | 1 | 0.1 | 1 | 0.1 | 0 | 0.0 | 0.00 |
| Suicide attempt | 6 | 0.4 | 3 | 0.2 | 3 | 2.7 | 13.50 |
| Palpable liver** | 75 | 8.5 | 64 | 7.9 | 11 | 15.7 | 1.99 |
| Spider nevi ${ }^{+}$ | 11 | 1.2 | 8 | 1.0 | 3 | 4.3 | 4.30 |
| Dupuytrens contractures** | 33 | 3.7 | 29 | 3.6 | 4 | 5.7 | 1.58 |

* Indicates tests meeting selection criteria of likelihood ratio >1 and sensitivity $>5 \%$
$+N$ sampled $=884$, non-specificity $N=814$, Sensitivity $N=70$


## (I) Self-report items

Nearly all trial self-report items and those derived from the Munich Alcoholism Screening Test were administered after the SMAST, giving a total sample size for phases 2,5 and 6 of 537. Two other questions were also added to the pool of trial question responses for analysis. The first was a self-report quantity-frequency measure and the second a question about family members with alcohol problems (questions 5, 6 and 8, Appendix C). These questions were asked before the SMAST was given and samples of 1602 and 1613 responded respectively.

The self-reported quantity-frequency measures were treated separately for men and women. Since the author could find no cited evidence about which levels of alcohol intake could lead to alcohol problems, it was accepted that if men drank on the average more than 70 millitres of ethanol per week and women more than 30 per week (about 36 nips and 15 nips of spirits each) then in the long term alcohol problems may result. These levels were thererore used as a trial marker for the quantity-frequency item.

The distribution of the quantity-frequency measures for both sexes, their non-specificity and sensitivity, and the numbers scoring above and below the criterion are given in Table 4. Twenty-six percent of males and 24 percent of females scored above the quantity-frequency criteria. In view of the likely prevalence of problem drinking in this sample to be in the range of 10 to 20 percent (McIntosh, 1982) then a prevalence
of around 25 percent scoring above quantity-frequency criteria was considered acceptable. These results, with their accompanying non-specificities and sensitivities were added to the pool of trial item results. Between the sexes, there were no significant differences for those scoring above or below the criterion $\left(X^{2}=1.57,1\right.$ d.f., p>0.1).

The prevalence of positive responses to all trial self-report items (including the previous quantity-frequency question, scored as above or below criterion) and their sensitivity, non-specificity and likelihood ratios are given in Table 5. In order to be selected the questions were required to have a likelihood ratio of more than one and a sensitivity less than five percent. Only one item in Table 5 (question 26 "At the moment do you feel miserable because of any problems or difficulties related to your drinking?") did not meet the selection criteria, because its sensitivity was less than five percent. In fact, only three patients (0.6 percent) scored positively to this item.

Thus 22 of the 23 re-written Munich Alcoholism Screening Test items were included and two additional items, one relating to family members with alcohol problems and the other to quantity-frequency measures, were finally selected as self-report questions.

## (II) Medical examination and blood tests

Blood samples for liver function testing were routinely taken in 73 percent of cases for which full self-report data were obtained. Alkaline Phosphotase (Phos), Aspartate Transaminase (AST) and Gamma-glutamyl-transpeptidase (GGT)

```
were three of twenty-seven liver function tests calculated Whenever a SMAC was ordered for a patient. The SMAC is a computerised analytical processor which automatically calculates liver function scores from about five millilitres of blood. A muther five mls of blood were required for the Pathology Department to determine mean cell volume (MCV).
```

The prevalence, sensitivity, non-specificity and likelihood ratios for elevated tests are given in Table 6. GGT is sex specific and so must be evaluated separately for men and women. Alkaline Phosphotase and MCV were excluded because they did not meet selection criteria. It was important to note that elevated GGT occurred in nearly a quarter of non-problem drinkers (i, e., non-specificity), indicating that caution would be needed in its interpretation, and stressing the importance of interpreting elevated values in combination with other markers.

The requested medical examination for a palpable liver, spider nevi and Dupuytrens contractures was completed in 884 cases ( 55 percent) in which full self-report data were obtained, and the results from other medical examinations written in the ward notes were obtained in 1578 (98 percent) of cases. After discussions with senior medical staff, it was assumed that if a marker was not elevated, then its normality is not recorded in patient's notes. That is, medical staff record what is abnormal and rarely record normal results.

The prevalence, sensitivity, non-specificity and likelihood ratios for elevated medical examination tests are given in

Table 7. Of the twenty tests investigated, only three met selection criteria (accidents, all types and more than one; a palpable liver; Dupuytrens contractures).

In summary, of the twenty-rour medical examination and blood tests investigated, only five were finally selected. These were: elevated AST, elevated GGT, a palpable liver, Dupuytrens contractures, and accidents (all types, more than one). It was the opinion of the author that the item relating to acoidents should be rewritten to a self-report item as "Have you been in hospital more than once because of accidents? (by accidents, we mean all types)".

These resulting twenty-four self-report items and four medical items will be referred to as the "PDST Self-report" and "PDST Physicians" sections for subsequent analyses (see Appendix $F$ ).
(III) Stepwise regression and correlation analyses

Stepwise regression and correlation analysis were calculated for the selected items as a further check for their inclusion. Problem versus non-problem drinking was the dependent variable (SMAST scores of more than 1 and of 0 respectively and only data from phases 2,5 and 6 were used, The frequency of responses for the selected items are given in Table 3 , Appendix $E$. The PDST physicians section (questions 25 to 28, Appendix F) was initially excluded from the regression analysis because only 214 patients had all

Cour physician's items checked in phases 2, 5 and 6 ( 39 percent of patients) and of these, only about 10 percent had elevated scores. Also, regressing the physician's items

Stepwise Regression Analysis of Selected Items With Problem and Non-Problem Drinking Dependent

$$
(N=537)
$$

| $\begin{gathered} \text { Question } \\ \text { item }^{1} \end{gathered}$ | B | Beta | Std. <br> Error B | R Square ${ }^{2}$ | Simple R | F Ratio | Sig. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6 | 0.304 | 0.28 | 0.041 | 0.369 | 0.607 | 54.587 | a |
| 20 | 0.158 | 0.12 | 0.050 | 0.490 | 0.550 | 10.078 | a |
| 9 | 0.171 | 0.13 | 0.046 | 0.540 | 0.507 | 13.731 | a |
| 23 | 0.169 | 0.14 | 0.046 | 0.569 | 0.500 | 13.436 | a |
| 13 | 0.159 | 0.07 | 0.083 | 0.585 | 0.417 | 3.682 | a |
| 10 | 0.177 | 0.13 | 0.046 | 0.595 | 0.477 | 14.827 | a |
| 2 | 0.150 | 0.15 | 0.034 | 0.603 | 0.467 | 19.511 | a |
| 17 | -0.100 | -0.08 | 0.046 | 0.609 | 0.316 | 4.739 | a |
| 22 | 0.361 | 0.16 | 0.089 | 0.613 | 0.417 | 16.615 | a |
| 4 | 0.053 | 0.06 | 0.023 | 0.618 | 0.186 | 5.232 | a |
| 11 | 0.051 | 0.03 | 0.062 | 0.622 | 0.406 | 0.677 | c |
| 16 | -0.168 | -0.09 | 0.066 | 0.624 | 0.440 | 6.382 | a |
| 5 | -0.100 | -0.07 | 0.049 | 0.627 | 0.223 | 4.260 | a |
| 8 | 0.132 | 0.08 | 0.059 | 0.630 | 0.486 | 5.058 | a |
| 15 | 0.147 | 0.09 | 0.064 | 0.631 | 0.470 | 5.262 | a |
| 7 | -0.291 | -0.11 | 0.105 | 0.635 | 0.215 | 7.610 | a |
| 18 | 0.083 | 0.06 | 0.056 | 0.636 | 0.477 | 2.240 | a |
| 21 | -0.085 | -0.06 | 0.068 | 0.637 | 0.490 | 1.540 | b |
| 24 | 0.066 | 0.04 | 0.060 | 0.638 | 0.449 | 1.214 | c |
| 12 | 0.098 | 0.04 | 0.084 | 0.638 | 0.315 | 1.374 | c |
| 3 | 0.036 | 0.03 | 0.036 | 0.639 | 0.156 | 1.011 | c |
| 14 | -0.040 | -0.02 | 0.090 | 0.639 | 0.252 | 0.193 | c |
| 19 | -0.016 | -0.01 | 0.080 | 0.639 | 0.416 | 0.039 | c |
| (constant 0.0023) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

[^1]
# Stepwise Regression of Selected Physician's Items 

 for 214 Problem and Non-Problem Drinkers| Item | B | Beta | Error 8 | R Square ${ }^{2}$ | Simple R | F Ratio | Sig. |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| AST | 0.171 | 0.15 | 0.077 | 0.037 | 0.192 | 4.912 | a |
| GGT | 0.048 | 0.14 | 0.024 | 0.058 | 0.187 | 4.025 | a |
| Duputyrens |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Contractures | 0.114 | 0.10 | 0.084 | 0.073 | 0.134 | 1.845 | b |
| Palpable liver | 0.058 | 0.06 | 0.067 | 0.076 | 0.126 | 0.741 | b |

## order of entry

cumulative
a significant at 1 percent level or less
b not significant at 10 percent level or less
AST $=$ Aspartate transaminase
GGT = Gamma-glutamyl-transpeptidase
responses of these 214 patients with the SMAST criterion measure accounced for only eight percent of the total explained variance (Table 9). The author felt, however, that the test should include some objective externally perceived measures to give the resulting test race validity. The physician's section was therefore analysed separately.

## Self-report items

The linear stepwise regression analysis results for the selected self-report items are given in Table 8 . All questions were entered into the analysis, although several were not significant at 10 percent or less, but were still entered because at least 0.1 percent of the proportion of the variance not explained by other independent variables could be explained by the addition of these questions. Taken together, the 23 self-report questions explained 64 percent of the total variance and correlate 0.80 with the criterion score. The Pearson product-moment correlation coefficients for each item with the criterion measure ranged from 0. 16 to B. 61 .

Questions which correlated 0. 5 or more with the criterion Were: "After the first glass or two of alcohol do you ever Seel a craving for more?"; "When you are upset do you drink alcohol to calm down?"; "When you drink a lot of alcohol, do you tend to eat less?"; and "Have you ever deliberately tried to do without any alcohol at all?". These four questions were also the $\operatorname{cirst}$ four entered into the regression analysis and all are indicative of dependent problem drinking. These first four questions accounted for 89 percent of the explained variance. Question 6, "After the first glass or

```
two or alcohol do you ever reel a craving for more?", is
responsible for more than half of the total explained
variance. The overall regression equation was highly
significant (F=39.49; d.f.=23.513; p<0.001).
```

The bet́a values in Table 8 allow a comparison to be made of the effects of the independent variables on the outcome variables. When the beta values are positive, the question helps to explain problem drinking, while negative beta coefficients are associated with non-problem drinking. It is difficult to explain the negative coefficients in Table 8 although it may in part be due to the interpretation of the question. For example, question 17 which has a negative beta coefficient is "In order to cut down your drinking, have you ever felt it necessary to limit it to certain occasions or certain times of the day?". Some non-problem drinkers may respond positively to this because they feel it is inappropriate to drink at certain times of the day (e.g. while at work) and may not be relating their response to "In order to cut down". Another example, question 7 "Do you find you are thinking a lot about alcohol?", could be scored positively by non-problem drinkers who are highly aware of the effects and consequences of alcohol abuse, but who drink very little or not at all.

An examination of the item intercorrelation matrix (Table 4 , Appendix E) reveals that the two items "Have you been in hospital more than once because of accidents? (by accidents we mean all types)." and "Have any close family members such as a parent, spouse, brother or sister, had drinking problems?" (questions 3 and 4, Appendix VI) have very low
correlations with other self-report items. The question
"Have you been in hospital more than once because of accidents?" correlates best with "Do you find you are thinking a lot about alcohol?" (question 7), which confirms the author's subjective view that patients hospitalised from a recent alcohol-related accident are frequently concerned about the role alcohol had in the accident.

Several items correlate 0. 5 or higher with other items. These are question 24 ("Have you often been told that your breath smells of alcohol") with questions 6,21 and 22 ("After the first glass or two of alcohol do you ever feel a craving for more?", "Are there times when you would like to stop drinking?", "Would you get along better with your spouse/partner/the people you are closest to if you didn't drink?") which could be interpreted as patient awareness of the effect of their alcohol use on others, combined with an inability to stop drinking.

The next highest intercorrelations are between question 14 ("Do you prefer to drink alone?") and questions 12 and 13 ("Have you ever used acohol to get rid of trembling or the Eeeling that you might be sick?", "Have you ever been criticised at work because of your drinking?") which could be seen as indicative of alcohol dependence. Finally, there is a high correlation between question 18 ("Do you feel you should drink less?") and questions 16 and 17 ("Do you ever have a guilty conscience about drinking?", "In order to cut down your drinking, have you ever felt it necessary to limit it to certain occasions or to certain times of the day?"), suggesting an awareness that their drinking has been
excessive and they have a genuine desire to drink less.

## Physician Items

The regression analysis results for the SMAST criterion measure against the selected physician items for the 214 patients who had all four items checked in phases 2,5 and 6 , are given in Table 9. All items were entered although two ( presence of Dupuytrens contractures, presence of a palpable liver) were not significant at the 10 percent level or less. The four physician's items together explain only eight percent of the variance and correlate 0.28 with the criterion measure. All items have positive beta values and all have similar correlations with the criterion measure, ranging from D. 13 to 0. 19.

The intercorrelation matrix (Table 5, Appendix E) indicates a very weak relationship between the physician's examination items (the presence of a palpable liver, the presence of Dupuytrens contractures) and the liver function blood tests (AST, GGT) for the 570 patients on which full data on each item were collected. However, the correlations were much higher between individual blood tests and also between the physician's examination items.

Summary of Item Selection

On the basis of data from a maximum of 1613 patients, 25 self-report trial questions and 24 trial medical markers were reduced to 24 self-report and rour medical items on the basis of sensitivity, non-specificity, and likelihood ratios.

These resulting items, named "PDST self-report" and "PDST physician's" were then subjected to a stepwise linear regression analysis using the SMAST as a criterion measure to confirm their selection. All selected items were entered into the analysis.

## ITEM ANALYSIS

An item analysis was conducted to check that the selected items represent the content domain of problem drinking, fit the definition of a subconstruct, and are largely internally and externally perceived. The definition of a problem drinker as someone whose drinking causes harm to themselves or others is so broad that any items which measured the construct represented by this definition were likely to be sampling that content domain.

Eirst, it can be argued that because the initial pool of items was selected by various means to sample the content domain of problem drinking, then any items selected empirically from that pool will therefore also represent the content domain.

Second, an examination of the final 24 self-report and four physician's items reveals that eachitem is consistent with the definition of a subconstruct. Each item measures only one idea and represents one pole of a subconstruct scale. In Sact, a positive response to any item contributes positively to the problem drinking condition. That is, all items represent elements at "like" ends of the subconstruct scales. Also, as previously mentioned, each item was chosen to give "yes" or "no" responses rather than a number of discrete

## TABLE 10

Raw Data on the Responses of Six Raters
On the Internal-External Dimensions of the PDST Self-Report Questions

| PDST Question* | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | Total |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Internal | 6 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 6 | 6 | 2 | 5 | 4 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 107 |
| External | 0 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 0 | 0 | 4 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 4. | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 31 |
| Ratio E/I | 0.0 | >1 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 2.0 | 0.2 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 1.0 | 2.0 | 0.2 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.3 |

* see Appendix $F$ for questions

TABLE 11
Percentage* of Inter-Rater Agreement on the
Number of Self-Report PDST Internal-External Questions

| Rater | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 100 | 78 | 78 | 83 | 78 | 83 |
| 2 |  | 100 | 83 | 83 | 78 | 78 |
| 3 |  |  | 100 | 83 | 61 | 87 |
| 4 |  |  |  | 100 | 65 | 100 |
| 5 |  |  |  |  | 100 | 65 |
| 6 |  |  |  |  |  | 100 |

No. in agreement
*Percentage $=\overline{\text { Total no. of questions }}$
Average $=79$ percent
measures along the subconstruct scale. This is consistent with kellys allocation of 0 or 1 for each scale pole, and also with the mathematical explanation in Appendix $B$.

Last, in order to assess the presence of external and internal dimensions for each item, two experienced practice nurses, three psychologists (each having masters degrees in psychology, and with clinical experience) and one secondary school teacher (with a masters degree in english) independently rated each PDST self-report question as being largely externally or largely internally perceived. The physician's section was omitted from this analysis because each item is an objective external measure. The raw data and ratio of external to internal scores are given in Table 10. Any item which had a ratio of external score to internal score less than one was therefore more internally than externally perceived. of the 23 items, only six ( 26 percent) were rated as largely external. These were PDST self-report questions $3,4,5,8$ and 13 (see Appendix $F$ for questions). Question 11 ("Have you found that your hands have been trembling a lot?") was rated as being equally external and internal. The percentage of inter-rater agreement was calculated for each pair of raters as:
percentage $=$ number in agreement $/$ (total number of questions).

These percentages for the total number of inter-rater agreements are given in Table 11. Overall, the raters agreed in 79 percent of cases.

TABLE 12
Age and Sex Characteristics for Problem Drinkers and Controls


TABLE 13
Consumption Data for Problem Drinkers and Controls Consumption in average mls ethanol/day

| Drink | $\begin{gathered} \text { Problem } \\ \text { mean } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { drinkers } \\ & \text { s.d. } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & (N=116) \\ & \text { range } \end{aligned}$ | Contr mean | $s . d .$ | $=242)$ <br> range | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Significance } \\ & (351 \mathrm{d.f.)} \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Beer | 97.2 | 134.8 | 0-999* | 10.4 | 18.8 | 0-120 | $t=7.50$ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $p<0.001$ |
| Spirits | 24.5 | 52.2 | $0-300$ | 8.7 | 15.9 | $0-100$ | $t=4.03$ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $p<0.001$ |
| Fortified | 4.4 | 29.2 | 0-300 | 3.2 | 9.3 | 0-60 | $t=0.56$ |
| Wine |  |  |  |  |  |  | NS |
| Table Wine | 8.7 | 32.5 | 0-200 | 5.4 | 12.9 | 0-80 | $t=1.47$ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $p<0.1$ |
| Other | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.1 | 10.3 | 0-20 | - |
| Total | 131.5 | 129.7 | 0-804 | 27.7 | 18.1 | 0-120 | $t=9.31$ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $p<0.001$ |

* Consumption exceeded 1000 mls ethanol/day

Age Factors in Selected Physician's Items for Problem Drinkers and Controls

|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { AST }(>50 \\ & \text { elevated } \end{aligned}$ | /1) <br> normal | $x^{2}$ | g. | $\begin{array}{r} \text { GGT } \quad(>50 \\ \quad(>35 \\ \text { elevated } \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{r} \left.\mathrm{IU} / 10^{9}\right) \\ \mathrm{IU} / 18 \text { ) } \\ \text { normal } \end{array}$ | $x^{2}$ | g. | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Palpable } \\ & \text { elevated } \end{aligned}$ | liver <br> normal | $x^{2}$ | P. | Duputy <br> Contrac <br> elevated | rens <br> tures normal | $x^{2}$ | g. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Problem drinkers: ( 5 MAST $>2$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\geqslant 30 \mathrm{yrs}$ | 3 | 33 | 0.01 | NS* | 10 | 10 | 2.31 | NS | 7 | 18 | 2.48 | NS* | 3 | 22 | 2.70 | NS* |
| $<30 \mathrm{yrs}$ | 2 | 17 |  |  | 5 | 14 |  |  | 2 | 19 |  |  | 0 | 21 |  |  |
| Controls: (SMAST $=0$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\geqslant 30 \mathrm{yrs}$ | 35 | 611 | 0.48 | NS* | 164 | 494 | 10.21 | <0.001 | 37 | 469 | 5.94 | <0.025* | 15 | 491 | 2.31 | NS* |
| < 30 yrs | 3 | 80 |  |  | 7 | 72 |  |  | 0 | 76 |  |  | 0 | 76 |  |  |

* Fishers exact test used


## TABLE 15

PDST Self-Report Score Distributions for Trial Weightings

| Trial | Groups | POST Score |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | $6+$ | Total |
| B weights | Controls | 234 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 242 |
|  | Problem drinkers | 5 | 3 | 8 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 93 | 116 |
| B weights | Controls | 184 | 52 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 242 |
| scaled | Problem drinkers | 11* | 5 | 3 | 4 | 2 | 3 | 88 | 116 |
| Equal weightings | Contrals | 184 | 52 | 2 | 1 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 242 |
| of 1 | Problem drinkers | 6 | 7 | 12 | 9 | 14 | 14 | 54 | 116 |

* One patient scored -3 , one patient -2 , and two -1 .

TABLE 16

## Cut-Off Score Effects on PDST Self-Report Score Distribution <br> for Different Item Weightings

| Weightings | Cut-off score |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 2 |  |  | 3 |  |  |  | 4 |  | 5 |  |  |
|  | A | B | c | A | B | c | A | B | c | A | B | c |
| B weights | 2.89 | 93.10 | 0.031 | 2.47 | 86.21 | 0.029 | 1.24 | 83.62 | 0.015 | 0.41 | 81.90 | 0.005 |
| $B$ weights scaled | 2.47 | 86.21 | 0.029 | 1.65 | 83.62 | 0.020 | 1.24 | 80.17 | 0.015 | 1.24 | 78.45 | 0.016 |
| Equal weightings of 1 | 2.47 | 80.17 | 0.031 | 1.65 | 69.82 | 0.024 | 1.24 | 62.07 | 0.020 | 1.24 | 58.62 | 0.021 |

$A=$ Percent of controls over cut-off score
$B=$ Percent of problem drinkers over cut-off score
$C=$ Ratio of $A / B$

## TABLE 17

Linear Regression for 353 Problem and Control Drinkers to Determine PDST Self-Report Cut-off Score

Self-report PDST $=1.425 *$ SMAST $\div 0.752$
$F=404.95$, d.f. $=1.351, p<0.01$
Pearson's correlation $=0.82$

|  | SMAST Categories |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Alcoholic | Possibly <br> Alcoholic | Definitely <br> Alcoholic |  |
| SMAST Score | $0-1.49$ | $1.50-2.49$ | $>2.50$ |
| PDST Score | $0-2.88$ | $2.89-4.30$ | $>4.32$ |

PDST Self-Report Distribution in Relation to Short MAST Scores

| Groups | PDST Self-report score (\%) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $N$ | 0 | 1-2 | 3-5 | 6-8 | $9+$ | CAST >3 |
| Contral | 242 | 76.0 | 22.3 | 1.7 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 1.7 |
| Problem drinking |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| SMAST groups: |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Non-alcoholics (SMAST=1) | 39 | 12.8 | 28.2 | 33.3 | 17.9 | 7.7 | 58.9 |
| Possibly alcoholic (SMAST=2) | 36 | 2.8 | 16.9 | 38.9 | 33.3 | 8.3 | 80.5 |
| Definitely alcoholic (SMAST $=3+$ ) | 41 | 0.0 | 4.9 | 24.4 | 34.1 | 36.6 | 95.1 |
| Total | 116 | 5.2 | 16.4 | 31.8 | 28.5 | 18.1 | 78.5 |

PDST Physician's Score Distribution for Trial Weightings

| Trial | Groups | CAST Score |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | Total |
| B weights | Controls | 196 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 196 |
|  | Problem Drinkers | 18 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 18 |
| B Weights | Controls | 143 | 32 | 10 | 8 | 2 | 0 | 1 | 196 |
| scaled | Problem Drinkers | 5 | 6 | 1 | 6 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 18 |
| Equal weightings | Controls | 143 | 40 | 10 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 196 |
| of 1 | Problem Drinkers | 5 | 7 | 6 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 18 |

## TABLE 20

## PDST Score Distribution (Physician's plus Self-Report) for 214 Problem Drinkers and Controls



TABLE 21
Principal Factor Matrix for PDST Questions
( $\mathrm{N}=111$ problem drinkers)

| Questions | Factor 1 | Factor 2 | Factor 3 | Factor 4 | Communality |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | .083 | . .466 | . .429 | -.185 | .442 |
| 3 | .118 | .027 | -.056 | -.197 | .057 |
| 4 | .124 | -.257 | .107 | .156 | .117 |
| 5 | .320 | .261 | -.270 | -.339 | .359 |
| 6 | .299 | -.138 | .139 | .281 | .207 |
| 7 | .378 | -.221 | -.087 | .189 | .235 |
| 8 | .204 | .117 | -.091 | .129 | .080 |
| 9 | -.025 | .490 | -.091 | -.173 | .278 |
| 10 | .347 | -.117 | -.073 | .123 | .154 |
| 11 | .329 | .261 | -.057 | .310 | .275 |
| 12 | .310 | .364 | -.376 | .284 | .451 |
| 13 | .422 | .298 | -.168 | .100 | .305 |
| 14 | .333 | .018 | -.324 | -.104 | .227 |
| 15 | .318 | .167 | .148 | .189 | .187 |
| 16 | .540 | -.102 | .096 | -.011 | .311 |
| 17 | .384 | .108 | . .321 | .193 | .299 |
| 18 | .431 | .198 | .218 | -.085 | .280 |
| 19 | . .718 | -.017 | .084 | -.203 | .552 |
| 20 | .345 | .021 | .072 | .062 | .129 |
| 21 | .512 | -.100 | .178 | -.200 | .344 |
| 22 | $\frac{.560}{23}$ | -.377 | -.188 | -.266 | .561 |
| 24 | .268 | -.209 | .035 | -.041 | .118 |
| Total $\%$ | .331 | -.220 | -.056 | -.013 | .161 |
| of variance 51.1 | 21.4 | 14.1 | 13.5 |  |  |
| Eigen value 3.13 | 1.31 | 0.86 | 0.83 |  |  |

Counting in the physician's section, a total of 17 of the 27 scoring items (63 percent) were rated as largely internally perceived.

It can be concluded from the item analysis that each of the selected questions which form the PDST are consistent with the definition of a subconstruct. Also they do sample the content domain of problem drinking and do have largely internally and externally perceived items.

SELECTION OF PROBLEM DRINKING AND CONTROL GROUPS The major purpose of selecting problem drinking and control groups (Step 3, Figure 13) was to provide criterion measures in order to experimentally determine cut-off scores and item weightings.

Only data from patients in phases 2,5 and 6 were used to select for the problem drinking and control groups, because only these patients were given the PDST self-report questions independently of the SMAST results, remembering that the SMAST results in other phases significantly affected the pDST self-report responses. Of the 537 patients taking part in these phases, only 358 were used for the problem drinking and control groups, with the remaining patients being omitted because they did not meet either group's criterion. There were 116 problem drinkers and 242 controls, and both groups were significantly different on age and sex factors ( $x^{2}$ $=7.92, \mathrm{p}<0.005,1 \mathrm{d.f.} ,\mathrm{Table} \mathrm{12)}$. also drinking significantly more alcohol than controls ( $t=9.31, \quad p<0.001,351=$ d.f.), with the difference being most apparent in the consumption of beer and spirits (see Table13)

In order to determine whether age factors were likely to affect the outcome on the physician's items, both problem drinkers and controls were divided into patients over 30 years of age and under 30. A significant difference was found between these ages for $\operatorname{GGT}\left(X^{2}=10.21,1\right.$ d. r., $\left.p<0.001\right)$ and the presence of a palpable 1 iver $\left(X^{2}=5.94,1\right.$ d.e., $p<0.025$ ) For controls, but not ror problem drinkers (Table 14). However, a comparison between problem drinkers and controls on age factors in the physician's items cannot really be made because of the significant difference between the mean ages for these two groups (t=25.85, 351 d.f., p<0.001, Table 9). An examination of table 14 does nevertheless, show that patients under the age of 30 years selected as problem drinkers would not be likely to score significantly difrerently on the physician's items from those over the age of 30 years.

ITEM WEIGHTINGS AND CUT-OFF SCORES

Since it was likely that the PDST would be used in settings where a physician's assessment was not always possible, experimental weightings and cut-off scores were considered separately for the self-report $P D S T$ and when the physician's section was added in.

## PDST Self-report weightings

There were three trial methods used for determining item weightings: First, the $B$ weights (item coefficients) from the stepwise regression analysis (Table 8) were used. Second, because it was likely in practice that these $B$ weights could not be calculated without the assistance of an electronic device, equal interval scales were employed to
convert the $B$ weights into whole numbers (see Table 6 , Appendix E). Last, items were given weightings according to the author's judgement on their relative importance, resulting in equal weightings of one.

The PDST self-report score distributions for controls and problem drinkers for these three different trial weightings are given in Table 15 . When the $B$ scaled weights were used, Sour problem drinkers scored negatively, and so these patients were recorded as scoring 0 for the purposes of the distribution. An examination of these distributions shows that the problem drinkers and controls are separated around PDST scores of either 2, 3, 4 or 5. In order to find which set of item weightings best separated the two groups two criteria were used:

1. The problem drinking and control patients PDST score distribution means should be separated maximally on either side of the cut-off score (shortly to be determined).
2. The item weightings should in practice, enable the items to be summed without an electronic calculator.

Given hypothetical cut-off scores of $2,3,4$ or 5 , the percentage of controls and problem drinkers scoring over these cut-orf scores and the ratio of these percentages are given in Table 16 . The maximal separation on either side of these cut-off scores occurs when the ratio of the percentages (column C) is the smallest. Table 16 reveals that there is little difference between the scaled $B$ weights and equal weightings of one. Given that in practice the use of
unscaled or scaled $B$ weights would be difricult, and that the ratio of percentages of problem drinkers and controls scoring over the hypothetical cut-off scores are very similar, the author decided to use equal item weightings of one. Also, equal weightings of one are consistent, as previously mentioned, with Kelly's method of summing construct scores and with the suggested mathematical method for measuring the construct (Appendis B). In this method equal item weightings of one can be easily summed from each item (subconstruct scale) response to give a total problem drinking score. The next section deals with how much measure of the construct, or the cut-off score, is needed to indicate drinking problems.

## PDST self-report cut-off scores

Regressing the SMAST scores from the problem-drinking group with their PDST self-report scores, indicated that a score of three or four points on the PDST corresponds to a score of two on the SMAST which is the lower cut-off for possibly alcoholic. The regression equation and predicted scores are given in Table 17 . On the basis of this relationship and the score distributions obtained in Table 15, a score of three or more on the PDST self-report section was chosen to indicate alcohol problems sufficiently severe to warrant further assessment.

The distribution of PDST self-report scores for the control group and problem drinking Short MAST groups is given in Table 18. The PDST misclassified only 1.7 percent of control group patients as problem drinkers. Of those classified definitely alcoholic by the short MAST, the PDST identified 95. 1 percent as problem drinkers. However, the PDST also
identiried as problem drinkers 12.3 percent and 58.9 percent of the two groups defined as non-alcoholic by the Short MAST (Short MAST scores of 0 and 1 respectively). These problem drinkers detected by the PDST but not by the short MAST tended to respond positively to the question on craving (Q. 6 Appendis F) and to questions indicating their concern about their level of drinking (Questions 9, 17, 18, 23, Appendix F) rather than questions relating to the physical or social consequences of drinking. Conversely, the PDST score did not reach the SMAST criterion measure for 19.5 percent of possible alcoholics and 4.9 percent of definite alcoholics. These patients missed by the PDST scored mainly on the Short MAST questions relating to external perceptions (arrests and others complaining) and not their internal personal concerns about their own drinking.

## PDST Physician's Section

## Item weightings

Using the data from phases 2, 5 and 6, there were 214 patients who had all four clinical items checked. Three methods of weighting items were investigated. These were: the B weights Erom Table 9; the B weights scaled to the nearest whole number (see Table 7, Appendix E); and equal weightings of 1. The PDST physician's score distribution using these trial weightings is given in Table 19. An examination of this table reveals that when $B$ weights are used, the sum of these weights for any patient is always less than one. A more usable distribution can be obtained by either scaling the $B$ weights into positive whole numbers, or
allocating equal weightings of 1 for each item.

Because there was generally a low likelihood of all four physicians items being available ( $p=0.182$ ) it was decided to count the total physician's section as for no positive item responses and 1 for any one or more of the physiciańs items elevated. The rationale for this scoring system was:

1. The distributions of the $B$ weights scaled uniformly to positive whole numbers and equal weightings of one (Table 19) both have equal numbers of patients scoring one or more on the physician's section (27 percent of controls and 72 percent of problem drinkers) and so it is simpler to allocate equal weightings of one.
2. An investigation of the effect of difrerent weightings and scoring systems on the total PDST's scores (self-report plus physician's) relation to the criterion measure revealed that treating the physician's section as a whole and scoring it as zero or one for any one or more items scoring positively, maximised the correlation with the criterion measure and accounted for the greatest amount of change in the explained variance.

Scoring the physician's section in this way increased the explained variance from 64 percent (without the physician's section) to 65 percent (when the physician's section was added to the PDST self-report section). The correlation co-efficient for the physician's section with the criterion measure was 0. 27.

## PDST Physician's plus self-report cut-off score

The total PDST score distribution for 214 problem drinkers and controls is given in Table 20. This was the distribution obtained when the physician's section was scored as one for any one or more items scored positively and zero otherwise. An examination of this table suggests that a cut-off score of four or more would be desirable on the basis of false positives (3. 6 percent) and that only 22.3 percent of problem drinkers would be missed by the PDST, which is similar to the 21. 6 percent missed when only the self-report section is used. Selecting any other cut-off score results in either an unacceptable number of false positives, or an unacceptable number of problem drinkers misclassified as normals.

On the basis of these cut-off score characteristics, it was decided that when the physician's section is included in the assessment and scored as zero or one, the cut-orf score for the PDST should be raised to four or more to indicate problems with alcohol.

PDST FACTOR STRUCTURE, CORRELATION MATRIX AND RELATION TO SMAST

## Introduction

These properties of the PDST are described only for the self-report section, since as earlier emphasised, it is expected that this section is likely to have the major usage. The factor structure and inter-correlation matrix are described for 111 patients from phases 2,5 and 6 . Also, the distribution of the self-report PDST and the SMAST is given
for 537 patients ( 111 problem drinkers and 426 controls) from phases 2, 5 and 6. Descriptions of the reliability and validity of the PDST will not be presented here: they are the subject of experiments II to $V$.

## Factor Structure

The item scores for 111 problem drinkers were subjected to a principal factor analysis (Nie et al., 1975). The principal factor matrix and item weightings are given in Table 21. Item loadings of more than +0. 4 are underlined. The analysis yielded two factors with an eigenvalue greater than or equal to one, and a further two factors with eigenvalues of 0.86 and 0. 83 respectively. The first two factors accounted for 72. 5 percent of the total variance, and no item loaded on more than two factors.

The first factor consists of six items (questions 13, 16, 18, 19, 21 and 22, Appendix $F$ ) and relate to the respondent's reelings of guilt. None of these questions is indioative of alcohol dependence and all indicate early symptomatology of problem drinking, such as concern about the spouse/partner's attitude and a desire to drink less or to stop drinking altogether. The highest loading on question 19 suggests an awareness that alcohol is causing problems which in combination with other items (guilty conscience; desire to drink less; would like to stop drinking) implies that persons scoring highly on this factor are likely to be well-motivated to receiving help: they are aware of their problems and would like to stop drinking or drink less. All of these six items from factor one were rated as being largely internally

The second factor has only two items, questions 2 and 9. Patients scoring highly on this factor may be substituting alcohol for food, since they are scoring on the drinking question and when they do drink, are eating less. Such patients often have long-standing drinking problems.

## Correlation matrix

The self-report inter-correlations were typically very low ranging from 0.0 to 0.42 (Table 8 , Appendix E). Only seven items correlated 0.35 or more. Of the seven items, question 19 ("Do you think that without alcohol you would have fewer problems?") correlated with four others: question 5 ("Do you drink before lunch fairly often?"), question 16 ("Do you ever have a guilty conscience about drinking?"), question 21 ("Are there times when you would like to stop drinking?"), and question 22 ("Would you get along better with your spouse/partner/the people you are closest to if you didn't drink?"). With the exception of question 5 , all of these questions have a heavy loading on factor one, and suggest that those with a self-awareness that there would be fewer problems without alcohol also have feelings of guilt, a desire to stop drinking, and a need for a better spouse/partner relationship.

## Relationship of the PDST self-report to the SMAST

The distributions of SMAST scores and PDST self-report scores and various aspects relating to these distributions are given in Table 3, Appendix E. The probability of being a problem drinker on the SMAST is 0.09, while on the self-report PDST the probability was 0.11. Thus, the self-report PDST was an
improvement over the SMAST in the detection rate. In ract, the self-report PDST detected 12,3 percent of patients with a score of zero on the SMAST. Other aspects relating to this table have already been discussed. The conclusion which can be drawn, however, is that the overall prevalence of possible problem drinking in the sample during the surveyed period was about 11 percent, as measured by the self-report PDST.

## 6. 4. DISCUSSION

The aim of this experiment was to select questions from a pool of trial items to provide a measurement instrument for the problem drinking construct. The result, the PDST
(Appendix F) was a 24 self-report item instrument of which 23 items score, with an optional physician's section of four items. The first two self-report items ("When did you last drink?", "How much do you normally drink each week?") serve to screen out patients who are not likely to be problem drinkers.

The majority of the 24 trial medical markers which were investigated were much too insensitive to use, and even the Cour included in the physician's assessment section of the PDST did not discriminate well, either singly or together. However, if this section is available, it would be useful to add to the self-report section to provide a more comprehensive view of the patient's functioning. It is expected that in practice the main function of the physician's section will be to provide evidence with which to confront patients who deny that their alcohol consumption is
causing problems.

When the Short MAST criterion measure of two or more is used to indicate "possible or definite alcoholism", the Short MAST misses 47 percent of those detected by the PDST (a score of three or more on the self-report section) as problem drinkers. The self-report PDST has 75 percent of items rated as being largely internally perceived, whereas the Short MAST questions relate mainly to external perceptions such as drinking/driving charges, hospital admissions and Alcoholics Anonymous attendances.

By investigating different item weightings empirically, it was decided to give each self-report item a weighting of one point and to sum the result for a total PDST score. When the physician's section is included, if any one or more item scores postively, a further point is added to the total PDST score and the cut-off raised by one to four.

From a construct measurement viewpoint, the justification for this simple addition of unitary positive response scores is given in Chapter three and in the mathematical explanation (Appendix B); that is, each PDST item is a subconstruct of the problem drinking construct. Each item has a scale which any patient can be represented on as a score of zero on one, corresponding to "no" or "yes". The overall representation on the problem drinking construct scale (the score on the PDST) can be described by the sum of the weighted representations on the subconstruct scales (the pDST item scores). Referring to equation 4 in Appendix $B$, all the $b^{\prime} s$ are one, and the test results, t, are either zero or one.

While the methods used to select the test items and to devise a scoring system are simplistic, the empirical evidence does nevertheless suggest that the PDST is an improvement over the Short MAST in measuring the problem drinking construct and has a higher percentage of internally perceived events, which if scored positively, do indicate that the patients are at least saying that they are having alcohol problems and may be motivated to accept help. The PDST has a strong first factor relating to a self-identified awareness of alcohol problems, guilt, and a desire to stop drinking or drink less. While the Short MAST has not yet been subjected to ractor analysis, Zung (1978) has factor analysed the longer MAST and identified four dimensions of alcohol dependence symptomatology; Help-Seeking, Discord, Alienation and Denial. The factor structures of the PDST and MAST suggest that the MAST is orientated towards dependent problem drinking, while the PDST could be better for use as an early detection instrument for non-dependent patients.

In Chapters 7 to 10 , a series of smaller experiments designed to study the validity and reliability of the pDST are described. These experiments are an important part of the total test development. Because it would have been difricult to collect data on the PDST physician's section, the experiments apply only to the PDST self-report section.

## CHAPTER SEVEN

## EXPERIMENT II: TEST CONSTRUCT VALIDITY

7. 1 INTRODUCTION

The aim of Experiment $I$ was to select test items from a pool of trial items in order to devise a measurement instrument for the problem drinking construct. While some of the psychometric properties of the PDST items have been presented, the next logical step is to investigate test validity. In this experiment the construct validity is explored using the principle of convergent validity (Martuza, 1977, p. 153). Divergent validity asserts that any two instruments intended to measure different constructs, should have a low linear correlation. This principle was not explored in this experiment, because a suitable similar length screening test designed to measure some other construct could not be round.

With convergent validity any two different measures of the same construct should have a relatively high linear correlation. That is, tests designed to measure the same characteristics should rank a group of respondents in approximately the same order. Since the PDST was the only measure developed specifically for non-dependent and dependent problem drinking, it was not possible to obtain another instrument which measures exactly the same construct. Again, the nearest approximation was the Michigan Alcoholism

Screening Test (MAST) (Selzer, 1974). The longer 25 question MAST was chosen for this experiment instead of the 13 item Short MAST because the longer version approximated the same length as the PDST, which is an important consideration in testing construct validity in this way (Martuza, 1977).

## 7. 2 METHOD

Settings and Subjects
All 71 subjects were inpatients during the first week of a program designed to treat alcohol dependence.

There were 40 male and 12 female patients from Queen Mary Hospital, Hanmer Springs, and 15 males and four females from Mahu Villa, Sunnyside Hospital. Both groups of patients were diagnosed as alcohol dependent by the admitting physicians and were involved in a treatment program of 12 weeks.

The average age of patients was 35 years (range 18 to 68 years) and none was drinking at the time of the study.

## Design and procedure

When patients were admitted for treatment, they were first placed in a welcome group, in which they were introduced to the hospital routine and the treatment program. In their welcome group sessions (usually the friday of the first week) patients were asked by the group leader if they would take part in some research about drinking patterns. They were asked to remember when they were last drinking and to respond for that time period. They were then given a

TABLE 22
Self-Report PDST and MAST Score Distributions for 71 Alcohol Dependent Patients

| PDST Score | 0-2 | 3-8 | 9-14 | 15-20 | 21-33 | $\geqslant 31$ | Total |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| N | 1 | 2 | 13 | 48 | 7 | 70 | 71 |
| Percent | 1.4 | 2.8 | 18.3 | 67.6 | 9.9 | 98.9 | 100 |
| Cumulative Percent | 1.4 | 4.2 | 22.5 | 90.1 | 100.0 |  | 100 |
| 1 Problem drinkers |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| MAST Score | 0-4 | $5-6^{2}$ | 7-25 | 26-44 | $45+$ | $\geqslant 77^{3}$ | Total |
| N | 0 | 2 | 11 | 46 | 12 | 69 | 71 |
| Percent | 0.0 | 2.8 | 15.5 | 64.8 | 16.9 | 97.2 | 100 |
| Cumulative Percent | 0.0 | 2.8 | 18.3 | 83.1 | 100.0 |  | 100 |
| 2 Possibly Alcoholic <br> 3 Definitely Alcoholic |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

TABLE 23
Relation Between PDST Self-Report and MAST Score Distributions

| Groups | $0-2$ | $3-10$ | PDST Score <br> $11-20$ | $21+$ | 23 |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Possibly alcoholic | $N$ | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 2 |
| $($ score 5-6) | $\%$ | 0.0 | 100.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 100.0 |
| Definitely alcoholic | $N$ | 1 | 3 | 58 | 7 | 68 |
| $($ score 7+) | $\%$ | 1.3 | 4.3 | 84.1 | 10.2 | 98.6 |
| Total |  | 1 | 5 | 58 | 7 | 70 |

self-administered questionnaire which had the PDST self-report section one one side and the MAST self-administered form on the other side (Appendix G). On completion all questionnaires were checked by the group leader to ensure that all items were answered.

## 7. 3 RESULTS

The raw data and the SPSS Source program for analysing it are given in Appendix $G$.

The PDST screened 70 of the 71 patients ( 99 percent) as problem drinkers, of which 91.5 percent scored 10 or more (maximum 23), with the average score 17. The one patient screened as a non-problem drinker was a 28 year old male whose major dependence was not alcohol. The MAST, on the other hand, screened all patients as dependent, 69 as definitely alcoholic and two as possibly alcoholic. The PDST and MAST score distributions are given in Table 22.

Table 23 shows the relationship between the PDST self-report and MAST scores. Only two of the patients screened as problem drinkers by the PDST were classified as possibly alcoholic by the MAST. The remaining 69 patients were classified derinitely alcoholic by the MAST including the one patient screened as a non-problem drinker by the PDST. An examination of this patient's responses reveals that he scored seven points on the MAST, rive points for a positive response to the question "Have you ever attended a meeting of Alcoholics Anonymous?", and two points for the question "Have
you ever been arrested for drunk driving, driving while intoxicated, or driving under the influence of alcoholic beverages?".

The responses to the quantity-frequency question of the PDST (question 23, Appendix $F$ ) gave the total mean consumption per week for each patient as the equivalent of 91 nips of spirits, or about three large 750 millitre bottles of gin.

The Pearsons product-moment correlation between the MAST and the PDST was 0.70.

### 7.4 DISCUSSION

The main purpose of this experiment was to provide a measure of the convergence of two tests measuring the same construct. The measure of 0.70 is acceptably high, accounting for 49 percent of the explained variance.

A weakness in this study is that the MAST was designed to detect alcoholics, which presumably are those dependent on alcohol. The PDST on the other hand, was designed to screen Cor problem drinking, which includes non-dependent and dependent patients. There is, therefore, a slight conceptual difference in the construct which both tests were designed to measure. That is, the correlation between the PDST and the MAST could be higher if the MAST was also designed to detect non-dependent problem drinking.
diagnosed as alcohol dependent. While this sample's age and sex characteristics are similar to the data the PDST were developed on (age: $t=2.09, p<0.01, d . f .=185 ;$ sex: $X^{2}=0.193$, p<0.10, 1 d..$)$, the number of alcohol dependent patients in Experiment $I$ and this experiment were clearly different, since, according to the MAST, 96 percent of patients in this sample were screened derinitely alcoholic while only 35 percent in Experiment $I$ were.

In summary, a correlation of 0.70 between the PDST and the MAST does indicate a reasonable agreement on the convergent validity of these two tests.

## CHAPTER EIGHT

## EXPERIMENT III: TEST CROSS-VALIDITY

## 8. 1 INTRODUCTION

According to Cronbach (1970) the purpose of cross-validating an instrument is to ensure that the test performs in the same way for different random samples from the same population. Martuza (1977) gives the following procedure for determining a cross-validation co-efficient:
(a) Derive a prediction equation using data generated by the first sample,
(b) Administer the predicted test to the second sample drawn from the same population,
(c) Use the prediction equation obtained from the first sample (called the validity sample) to estimate criterion performance for each of the individuals in the second sample (called the cross-validation sample),
(d) Measure the actual criterion performance for each individual in the cross-validation sample, and
(e) Calculate the linear correlation between the predicted and actual criterion scores for this cross-validation sample. (p.164).

## 8. 2 METHOD

The prediction equation for the PDST is simply the numerical sum or item responses and the criterion performance is problem or non-problem drinking. The preceding principles of Martuza are used in this experiment to provide a measure of the cross-validation for the PDST.

## Subjects and Setting

The samples were obtained during 1981 Erom 187 patients, of which 84 were from Queen Mary Hospital, Hanmer, and 83 were from Mahu Villa, Sunnyside Hospital. Other aspects about the setting and subjects are the same as those described in Experiment II.

Design and procedure
Data were collected by interview from patients during the first week of their treatment program using the questionnaire in Appendix $H$. The research assistants who conducted the interviews were three of those who assisted with the data collection for Experiment $I$. The questionnaire included the Short MAST, PDST and numerous other demographic and medical items relating to alcohol abuse. All patients approached agreed to take part in the interviews and each patient was asked to think back to the period in which they were last drinking.

Because at the time of the study patients were being treated for alcohol dependence, the author believed that the PDST would predict each patient in the cross-validation sample to be a problem drinker. Using Martuza's (1977) terminology, the criterion performance for each patient would be problem or non-problem drinking. The main point of this study was, therefore, to determine how many patients were screened as problem drinkers.

TABLE 24

Self-Report PDST score Distribution for 165 Alcohol Dependent Patients

| PDST Score | $0-2$ | $3-8$ | $9-14$ | $15-20$ | $21-23$ | Total |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $N$ | 0 | 12 | 59 | 92 | 2 | 165 |
| Percent | 0.0 | 7.2 | 35.8 | 55.8 | 1.2 | 100 |
| Cumulative Percent | 0.0 | 7.2 | 43.0 | 98.8 | 100 |  |

## 8.3

## RESULTS

of the 187 patients approached, full data were obtajned on 165. The SPSS Source program and raw data are given in Appendix $H$. The main reason for non-response ( 12 percent of patients) was that interviews were interupted by the requirements of the treatment program. The mean age of the sample was 39 years (range 16 to 76 ), and there were 127 males ( 77 percent) and 26 females. There was no significant difference in age between the PDST development data on 116 problem drinkers and the age of patients in this study $(t=0.23, p<0.1, d . f .=279)$, neither was there a significant difference in the numbers of males and females $\left(X^{2}=0.40\right.$, p<0.10, d.f. $=1$ ).

The PDST score distribution for the sample is given in Table 24. All patients scored three or more on the PDST self-report and 98 percent scored five and over.

## 8. 4 DISCUSSION

The purpose of this experiment was to determine whether or not the PDST performs in the same way on two different samples drawn from the same population. Because all alcohol dependent patients would be classified as problem drinkers by the PDST, and because all patients in this experiment had received a diagnosis of alcohol dependence, the hypothesis was that the PDST would predict each patient in the cross-validation sample to be screened as a problem drinker. The results confirmed this hypothesis.

As with Experiment II, the weakness of this study was that the sample did not include non-dependent problem drinkers while the validity sample had 34 percent ( 39 patients) in this category according to the Short MAST. A further validation study involving both dependent and non-dependent problem drinkers is therefore needed.

## CHAPTER NINE

## EXPERIMENT IV: TEST INTERNAL CONSISTENCY

### 9.1 INTRODUCTION

A test is said to be internally consistent if all of its items measure the same thing. The factor analysis results from Experiment $I$ suggest that the PDST is uni-dimensional, with the first factor accounting for more than half the total explained variance. Given this, and that the PDST was designed to measure the construct of problem drinking, it is important to determine whether the test items are a relatively homogeneous sample from the content domain. The two most frequently used techniques for measuring internal consistency are the split-half procedure and a calculation of co-efficient alpha. Given the choice between the split-half and alpha co-efficients for measuring the internal consistency, alpha is preferable because its application to any particular set of test data results in a unique value (Martuza, 1977, p. 128).

The aim of this experiment was to provide a measure of co-eriicient alpha for the pDST self-report.

## 9. 2 METHOD

Experiment $I$ for phases 2,5 and 6 . The subjects, setting and procedure for the data collection have been described in Sec. 6. 2.

Co-efricient alpha was calculated for the self-report PDST responses for the 537 problem and non-problem drinkers. Because the data were in dichotomous form, the equivalent Ruder-Richardson-20 equation was used.

## 9. 3 RESULTS

Co-efficient alpha was 0.89.

### 9.4 DISCUSSION

The Kuder-Richardson-20 co-efficient alpha calculation provides a useful lower bound estimate of reliability (Martuza, 1977, p. 131), which suggests that the PDST self-report has a true reliability greater than 0.89.

## CHAPTER TEN

## EXPERIMENT V: TEST RELIABILITY

### 10.1 INTRODUCTION

In Experiment $I$ PDST items were empirically selected and in Experiments II and III measures of test validity were obtained. However, no test would be authentic without some indication of its reliability. Reliability studies give information about the consistency of a person's score on a series of measurements. There are many ways of measuring test reliability, such as test-retest, parallel forms approach, the split-half procedure, a measurement of the alpha co-efficient and inter-rater reliability.

Another important consideration is the relationship between test length and reliability. According to Cronbach (1970) the importance of test length is that with every question added, the sample of performance becomes a more adequate index of performance on all possible questions. Extreme increases in test length, however, can introduce boredom and may reduce reliability.

The most obvious method for finding the reliability of test scores is by repeating the identical test on a second occasion with the same sample. The longer the time between tests, the lower the co-efricient of reliability (sometimes called the co-efficient of stability or temporal stability).

The reliability co-efficient is the correlation between the scores obtained by the same person on two administrations of the test. Error variance corresponds to the fluctuations of performance from one test session to the other. since retest correlations decrease progressively as the interval between testing lengthens, the error variance increases and there is an infinite number of retest reliability co-efficients for any test (Anastasi, 1976). The time interval between testing should therefore be appropriately chosen and any relevant intervening experiences of the subjects being tested need to be well-documented.

In the Standards for Educational and Psychological Tests (American Psychological Association, 1974) it is suggested that in some situations where test scores are obtained for changing characteristics of individuals, the test-retest reliability co-efficients may need to be calculated on the basis of successive days or weeks. Given the likelihood of treatment effects in the sample used in this experiment, the time interval needed to be as small as possible, yet not too small for the subjects to remember some of their cormer answers, which would give an over-estimation of reliability.

If the problem drinking construct is relatively stable over time for an individual then the obvious answer is to choose a long-time interval to minimise memory effects. However, there was no cited evidence of the likely stability of dependent or non-dependent problem drinking over intervals appropriate for a test-retest study. In one study of problem drinking test-retest reliability a time interval between testing of two weeks was used (stockwell et al., 1983). It
was decided here that to minimise treatment effects the time interval between testing should be one week.

### 10.2 METHOD

## Subjects and Setting

This study involved 23 patients from Mahu Villa, Sunnyside Hospital, and 44 patients Erom Queen Mary Hospital, Hanmer, at the beginning of 1984. All were inpatients undergoing treatment for alcohol dependence. Other details regarding the treatment programs in hospitals have been described previously in Experiment III.

Design and Procedure
All patients were given the self-report PDST (Appendix $F$ ) during the first week of their treatment, usually on a Friday. They were told to think back to the last time they were drinking before giving their responses. The patients' names were recorded at the top of the form to allow matching on retest. Approximately 60 patients from Queen Mary Hospital and 25 patients from Mahu completed the test on the first occasion, but a number of these were absent on retest because they had been discharged. Any patient who was unable to read or was having difficulty with the questions was able to be assisted by the author and a research assistant.

After exactly one week had elapsed, the patients completed the same questionnaire and were given the same instructions as on the previous occasion. A number of new patients had

TABLE 25
Test-Retest Correlation Coefficients for PDST Self-Report

$$
(N=67, \text { all significant at } p<0.005)
$$

| Question | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | TOTAL |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Correlation | .70 | .85 | .88 | .60 | .72 | .68 | .67 | .74 | .71 | .63 | .61 | .62 | .63 | .57 | .58 | .60 | .32 | .49 | .60 | .40 | .52 | .50 | .65 | .90 |

entered the program and they also completed the questionnaire. The rinal sample included all those patients who had completed the questionnaire on both test and retest measures.

### 10.3 RESULTS

A total of 67 patients completed the PDST on both occasions. Raw data and SPSS source programs are in Appendix I. There were 53 males, 14 remales, and the average age was 37.1 years (range 16 to 73 years). There was no significant difference in sex between the original PDST development data (Experiment I) on 116 problem drinkers and this sample ( $X^{2}=0.03, p<0.10$, d. $f .=1$ ), nor was there a significant difference in the age characteristics $(t=0.97, p<0.10, \mathrm{~d} . \mathrm{f} .=181)$.

Pearson correlation co-efficients were calculated for each of the 23 self-report scoring items and for the total score. These correlations are given in Table 25. Sixteen of the individual items yielded correlation co-efficients greater than 0.60, and six of these were greater than 0.70. The range was 0.32 to 0.88 . All items were significant at the p<0.001 level. The total score correlation was 0.90.

### 10.4 DTSCUSSTON

With the exception of question 17 , the PDST self-report items and the PDST total score were all found to yield consistently high and significant test-retest reliability co-efficients. The low reliability co-efficient for question 17 ("Do you
think that without alcohol you would have fewer problems?") may be explained in part by treatment effects. Seven patients (10 percent) who responded "no" to this question on the first test, responded "yes" on retest. It is possible that alcohol-dependent patients undergoing treatment, frequently initially deny their alcohol problems. The effect of treatment is to erode this denial, and if this is the case, a change in response patterns to question 17 would be likely.

## CHAPTER ELEVEN

## DISCUSSION AND CONCLUSIONS

While there is a large amount of literature on alcoholism as a disease, very little has been written on problem drinking as a concept, although problem drinking as a term is frequently referred to. Most notably, Cahalan (1970) presented a strong argument for adopting the term problem drinking to replace the term alcoholism. Cahalan also empirically derived clusters of drinking problems which could be summed and called problem drinking. However, Cahalan gives no conceptual argument as to why it is possible to do this. If we continue to approach problem drinking theory in an ad-hoc way, then there is a danger of the term becoming as confused and as emotionally charged as the term alcoholism.

It is only recently that two questionnaires, the Self-Administered Dependency Questionnaire (Stockell, 1979) and the Self-Administered Alcohol Dependence Data (Raistrick, 1983), have used a more accurate concept than alcoholism, namely the now ten-year old alcohol dependence syndrome (Edwards and Gross, 1976).

Undoubtedly Cahalan's attempt to produce clusters of drinking problems based on the definitions from plaut (1967), Rnuper (1967) and Keller and McCormick (1968) is to be admired. Yet the major difficulty is that because drinking problems are so idiosyncratic, any empirically derived definition needs
to be broad enough to include most possibilities: and it is likely to be imprecise. There is an urgent need, therefore, to reconsider how we interpret and communicate theory on problem drinking.

Interpreting problem drinking as a construct as defined in the Standards for Educational and Psychological Tests (1974) and more precisely as a personal construct by George Relly (1955) makes it possible to view a drinking problem as a concise, numerical and theoretically measurable concept. Both Relly and later Bavelas (1978) agree that constructs are ideas which organise some aspect of existing knowledge along a scale with end points. The theory developed in this thesis suggests that it is possible to allocate numbers to these ideas, as Kelly did, and to sum them to form an overall numerical representation of a cluster of ideas. The ideas are alcohol problem constructs, or subconstructs, and the sum of subconstructs forms the construct problem drinking. The strength of this theory is that it allows for all possible drinking problems to be measured similarly, and for problem drinking to be represented on a continuum.

Every person can be represented on the problem drinking construct scale and two or more people at the same point on the scale may have completely different clusters of problems, which vary over time and across situations. In this sense the construct of problem drinking is common to all individuals and can be measured in the same way for everyone, while at the same time it allows for the individual responses of each. Although the operational problem of deciding exactly which subconstructs form the content domain of
problem drinking may be difficult, this thesis does give a consistent way of both interpreting and scoring any drinking problem.

Kelly's personal construct theory was the stimulus for viewing problem drinking as a construct in this thesis. This does not mean that problem drinking should be viewed as primarily personal. In fact, the views of others, or the external perceptions, are an important part of the problem drinking construct. However, Kelly's theory does help explain the personal interpretations of drinking problems, and that these interpretations can be broken down into measurable subconstruct scales, with each scale representing a particular problem from the domain of problem drinking. This process also applies to the view of others, and it is important to combine both views when measuring the construct.

```
If a diagnosis of problem drinking is required, then a very
large sample of drinking problems from the content domain
would be necessary to ensure that all problem drinkers were
sharing the same equivalence classes. A much easier
approach, which the experiments in this thesis use, is to
select a representative sample of items from the content
domain to provide a measure of the construct. If all shared
quivalence classes are not included, then such a measure or
the construct can only hint on the possibility of problem
drinking, and as such, the measure becomes a screening rather
than a diagnostic instrument.
```

screening instrument for an unselected general hospital population to measure the construct of problem drinking, it was necessary to find statistically and ethically safe ways to select the target group. Also, because the construct being measured was on a continuous scale from non-problem to problem drinking, an efrort was made to ensure that only a small number of problems was needed before a patient scored positively, while at the same time trying to keep false positives to a minimum. The focus thus became one of measuring the construct in such a way that early detection for problem drinking was possible. There is increasing evidence that early detection for problem drinking is worthwhile (e.g.: Blume, 1983; Lewis and Gordon, 1983; Margolis, Krystal and Siegel, 1964; Smart, 1974; Vogler, Compton and Weissbach, 1966; Fagan and Fagan, 1966), and there is little point in screening only for dependent problem drinking when this is already apparent to medical staff.

The result of the experiments was the construction and refinement of the Problem Drinking Screening Test (PDST). Each item in the PDST was a subconstruct with a bipolar scale, scored as zero or one. The summing of these scores was justifiable mathematically and the total score provided a measure of the problem drinking construct, alerting the user to the possibility of drinking problems.

The PDST has been designed primarily as a self-report measure, although a physicians section is included. Because a large number of items (74 percent) from the self-report PDST are rated as internally perceived, then there is a high likelihood that a patient scoring on this section is at least
admitting to some alcohol problems, and so may be more motivated to receiving help than patients scoring on most other instruments, where the majority of items are usually externally perceived.

For dependent problem drinkers the PDST has construct validity $(r=0.70)$; it was 100 percent correct in a cross-validation study; the internal reliability was greater than 0.89 (co-efficient alpha 0.89) ; and the total score test-retest correlation was 0.90. Although other questions such as test utility and the validity of self-report have already been raised in Chapter five, one further consideration was needed before the PDST could be completed.

There is now substantial evidence that people move into and out of drinking problems (Cahalan, 1970; Vaillant, 1980, 1983) and that temporal markers such as the duration of the problem, need to be considered. For this reason a time frame, arbitrarily chosen as three months, was placed on all self-report responses. Failure to include this could result in gross over-reporting (Magruder-Habibet al., 1983) or false positives. While the need to focus on recent events may conflict with the disease concept of alcoholism, the focus fits perfectly well when viewing problem drinking as a construct.

Several conclusions can be drawn from this work: First, it is not only possible, but it is highly desirable to view problem drinking as a construct. Second, the construct can be measured in a way which enables the scientific development
of a problem drinking instrument. Third, with the exception of the PDST, there are no instruments which claim to detect or measure problem drinking. Fourth, there is an urgent need to present problem drinking theory scientifically so that it is not criticised for vagueness in the way the term alcoholism has been. Einally, as always, more research is needed.

## APPENDIX A

## LABELLING THEORY, SELE-EFFICACY AND THE PROBLEM DRINKING

## CONSTRUCT

The relevance of labelling theory in its application to the internal and external dimensions of the subconstruct scales is discussed below:

Tannenbaum (1938) was the first to point out the consequences of labelling for the self-concept and behavioural patterns of the labelled. The basis of labelling theory is that one's self-concept is influenced by the response of others. Most labelling theory is discussed in the framework of deviant behaviour patterns and has excluded problem drinking (e.g. Lemert, 1951; Becker, 1963; Brookover, Erickson and Joiner, 1967; Ziller and Golding, 1969; Ziller, 1973). The first mention of the function of labelling to drinking problems was by Roman and $\operatorname{Trice}(1968)$ who contended that the disease concept of alcoholism placed alcoholics and deviant drinkers in "sick roles" with expectations that served to develop, legitimize, and in some cases even perpetuate the abnormal use of alcohol. The general model was that the negative alcoholic labels of others lead to the acceptance of an alcoholic's self-view.

Ward (1979) has shown that perceived labelling and self-concepts account for differential drinking patterns. Other studies have shown that social-psychological variables play an important role in accounting for problem drinking (e.g. Cahalan, 1970; Jessor, Graves, Hansen and Jessor, 1968), although they have not incorporated perceived
alcoholic labels of others into self-concept. Ward concludes:

> significant others in the problem drinker's life are often those who impute the personally devastating negative alcoholic labels whose consequences are often further drinking. (p. 1044).

Further support for the notion that problem drinking labels by others affect self-concepts comes from several different sources.

Skinner et. al. (1982) compared individuals who identified themselves as alcoholic versus non-alcoholic in a clinical sample of 255 referred for alcohol-related problems. The self-identified alcoholics were more likely to have attended Alcoholics Anonymous and agree with its philosophy that abstinence is necessary for improvement. These authors conclude that the perception that a drinking problem exists is complemented by an exposure to an ideology such as Alcoholics Anonymous.

The second source of support comes from Keil et. al. (1983) who studied the effects of labelling from a social resources perspective. Their findings indicated that once a person was judged to have an alcohol problem, the likelihood of a repeated admission for treatment is enhanced.

The third source of evidence comes from Kaplan, Kanas, Pokorny and Lively (1974) who examined the MAST responses from 66 alcoholics from treatment wards (the self-identified alcoholics) and a matched group of alcoholics from general psychiatric wards (non-self-identified alcoholics). They found that the self-identified alcoholics scored
significantly higher on the MAST, and they also responded positively with a signiricantly greater frequency to the specific MAST items that were independently judged to reflect alcoholic self-identification. Unfortunately the authors do not report on which MAST items reslect alcoholic self-identification, other than that percent of the 25 question MAST items did so. Since a conservative estimate by the author of the 25 question MAST is that 18 (or 61 percent) of the items reflect the perception of others rather than self-perception (that is, external perceptions in construct scales), then it is likely that a large number of the alcoholic self-identification items reported by kaplan et. al. also reflected external perceptions,

Last, self-efficacy theory accounts specifically for the role of cognitive expectations in treatment and their effect upon behaviour (Bandura, 1977, 1978, 1980; Bandura and Adams, 1977; Bandura, Adams, Hardy and Howells, 1980). Bandura argues that a distinction can be made between outcome expectations, and efficacy expectations, which refer to the conviction that a person can successfully produce the behaviour required to achieve the outcomes. He points out that:

Individuals can believe that a particular course of action will produce certain outcomes, but if they entertain serious doubts about whether they can perform the necessary activities such information does not influence their behaviour. (1977, p193).

If Bandura's theory is correct, then abstinence treatment will be successiul only to the extent that the alcoholic develops a sense of mastery over maintaining life-long abstinence in the community, Since this is the most common therapeutic goal of most abstinence treatments some authors
(Sterne and Pittman, 1965; Davies, 1981) have expressed concern about the effect of moralistic judgements of motivation towards this goal on patient self-esteem. Rollnick and Heather (1982) suggest that some patients may not believe that life-long abstinence is the solution, or that one drink will necessarily lead to relapse. They believe that if labelling such patients as unotivated causes initial, specific problem to become generalised and insurmountable, then alternatives such as controlled drinking should be explored. Wilson (1978) on the other hand, argues that the alcoholics belief that they will not be able to cope with a return to drinking is deliberately reinforced in traditional approaches to abstinence treatment. Since some studies have shown that hospitalised alcoholics are concerned with the issue of respectability and returning to normality (Heather, Edwards and More, 1975; Rollnick and Heather, 1980), such an expectation may contribute to a general sense of hopelessness and low self-esteem and a feeling of being abnormal and different from most people (Rollnick and Heather, 1982).

Both outcome and efficacy expectations appear to contain positive and negative aspects (Rollnick and Heather, 1982). Expectation is created that life-long abstinence will lead to the resolution of the drinking problem (the outcome), while it is also emphasised that if the alcoholic returns to drinking, this will lead to relapse. Similarly, the alcoholic's feelings of personal mastery are developed remaining abstinent, yet an expectation is also created which stresses the personal weakness and inability to cope with further drinking. Rollnick and Heather (1982) predict that
if a person endorses the negative counterparts of these expectations, then they are likely to relapse if they return to drinking after a period of abstinence. Other authors have pointed out the belief that a single drink leads to relapse could createa self-fulfilling prophecy (Marlatt, 1978;

Wilson, 1978; Sobell, Sobell and Christelman, 1972; Schaeffer, 1971).

Labelling theory explains an aspect of the relationship between the external and internal scales of the problem drinking construct: that is, the external perceptions of others, whether they are derived from a social resources perspective or individualised, subtly influence the individual's internal perception on a subconstruct scale. As an example, consider a patient waking up in the morning after an alcohol-related accident the night before, and suppose they are questioned about how much they had to drink, or the perception on the "very little vs very much to drink" scale. Without reference to any other information, they may feel they had "very little to drink" (the internal representation). However, when told that their blood alcohol was over the limit (the external perception of others on the scale) they may very well change their responses. In labelling theory, the label "over the limit" may have led to the acceptance of an "over the limit" self-view. It is possible that the cumulative effect of labelling on other subconstruct scales could lead to the acceptance of a problem drinking self-view which, in turn, may lead to higher patterns of drinking and associated problems.

# A MATHEMATICAL EXPRESSION FOR THE PROBLEM DRINKING CONSTRUCT 

One of the problems in the clinical measurement of problem drinking is that instruments have been derived on an ad hoc empirical basis without thought on how the scales relate to some underlying construct or trait of interest. The test development procedure has usually been to empirically derive a scale, determinate its psychometric properties, and only then decide on what the test is measuring. However, there have been recent attempts (summarised in chapter 4) to derive alcohol dependency tests based on the alcohol dependence syndrome.

The mathematical explanation attempts to translate the problem drinking construct into a series of equations which can be incorporated into research. The mathematics has many assumptions and is simplistic and tentative. Its function is to explain in an exact way the psychological process of obtaining a problem drinking score from a variety of problem drinking subconstructs.

Suppose that $S_{1}$ is the problem drinking construct scale in which an individual may be represented by a score $x_{1}$, and that $S_{2}, \ldots, S_{n}$ are subconstruct scales of $S_{1}$ on which the individual can score $X_{i}$ for $S_{i}$ with possible values lying between and including 0 and 1. Suppose also that each $x_{i}$ is dependent on the results of tests $T_{1}, T_{2}, \ldots . T_{m}$ and that each $T_{i}$ has a measured $t_{i}$, also lying between and including 0 and 1 . Thus each $t_{i}$ is the stimulus at the end points of a tree structure which ultimately determine the score $x_{1}$ on the
problem drinking construct scale $S_{1}$. The branches of the tree are connected by the values of $x_{i}$ for each $S_{i}$. One possible structure is represented in Figure 1.

Figure 1. A tree structure of subconstruct scores


Since each $x_{i}$ is dependent on a combination of $x_{1} \ldots . . x_{n}$ and ultimately $t_{1}, \ldots, t_{m}$, then there must be coefficients $a_{i}$ for $x_{i}$ and $b_{i}$ for $t_{i}$ which determine this relationship. If the relationship between the scales is linear, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
x_{i}= & a_{i 1} x_{1}+a_{i 2} x_{2}+\ldots+a_{i n} x_{n}+b_{i 1} t_{1}+b_{i 2} t_{2}+ \\
& \ldots+b_{i m} t_{m} \\
= & \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j}+\sum_{k=p_{i k}}^{m} t_{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

It would be normal for $a_{i i}=0$, so that $x_{i}$ does not depend on itself, although this condition does not affect the following algebra.

Consider the simple tree structure in Figure 2. which represents the scores from six scales,

$$
X=\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right] \quad T=\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
t_{3}
\end{array}\right]
$$

and we may combine all the equations into one matrix equation

$$
\mathrm{X}=\mathrm{AX}+\mathrm{BT}
$$

In Figure 12, $a_{11}, a_{21}, a_{22}, a_{31}, a_{32}, a_{33}, b_{31}$ and $b_{32}=0$ 。

And so
$X=\left[\begin{array}{llll}0 & a_{12} & a_{13} & x_{1} \\ 0 & 0 & a_{23} & x_{2} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & x_{3}\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{llll}b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} & t_{1} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23} & t_{2} \\ 0 & 0 & b_{33} & t_{3}\end{array}\right]$
And so

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x_{1}=a_{12} x_{2}+a_{13} x_{3}+b_{11} t_{1}+b_{12} t_{2}+b_{13} t_{3} \\
& x_{2}= \\
& a_{23} x_{3}+b_{21} t_{1}+b_{22} t_{2}+b_{23} t_{3} \\
& x_{3}=
\end{aligned}
$$

$S_{1}, S_{2}, S_{3}$ and $T_{1}, T_{2}$, and $T_{3}$.

## Fiqure 2. A tree structure with six scores



Other than $S_{1}$, each scale contributes a score which in some way affects the final score $x_{1}$ on $S_{1}$. The following equations can be written:
$x_{1}=a_{11} x_{1}+a_{12} x_{2}+a_{13} x_{3}+b_{11} t_{1}+b_{12} t_{2}+b_{13} t_{3}$
$x_{2}=a_{21} x_{1}+a_{22} x_{2}+a_{23} x_{3}+b_{21} t_{1}+b_{22} t_{2}+b_{23} t_{3}$
$x_{3}=a_{31} x_{1}+a_{32} x_{2}+a_{33} x_{3}+b_{31} t_{1}+b_{32} t_{2}+b_{33} t_{3}$

The coefficients $a_{i j}$ form a $3 \times 3$ matrix, $A$, and the coefficients $b_{i k}$ form a $3 \times 3$ matrix $B$. If the scores $x_{i}$ and $t_{i}$ similarly form vectors $X$ and $T$, then:

$$
A=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\
a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\
a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33}
\end{array}\right] \quad B=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} \\
b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23} \\
b_{31} & b_{32} & b_{33}
\end{array}\right]
$$

In practice, the matrices $A$ and $B$ are not known, although the conceptual model suggests that they do exist, because the subconstruct scales sometimes relate to each other in some way and always determine the final score $x_{1}$ for the construct of problem drinking. If the subconstructs represent the content domain of problem drinking, then the number of subconstructs will be (columns in $A+$ columns in B)-1.

Generalising from the example in Figure 2 , the coefficients $a_{i j}$ form an $n x \operatorname{matrix} A$ and the coefficients $b_{i k}$ form an $n x m m a t r i x B$. Then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& X=\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
0 \\
0 \\
x_{n}
\end{array}\right] \quad T=\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
0 \\
0 \\
t_{m}
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Combining these as before gives the matrix equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=A X+B T \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $I$ is the $n \mathrm{x} \mathrm{n}$ identity matrix, then

$$
I X-A X=B T
$$

so

$$
(I-A) X=B T
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=(I-A)^{-1} B T \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

That is, the scores $X_{i}$ for scales $S_{i}$ can be derived from the result $t_{i}$ from scale $T_{i}$, providing $A$ and $B$ are known and providing (I-A) exists. Generally (I-A) will be invertible, although counter examples can be found.

Since the calculation by this method requires the inversion of the matrix (I-A), an alternative is to calculate $X$ by the convergence of successive approximations. Suppose there is an initial vector $X_{0}$ for which each ( $\left.x_{i}\right)_{0}$ is conveniently known. Setting

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{r}=A X_{r-1}+B T \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

for each $r=1,2, \ldots$ enables $\left(x_{i}\right)_{r}$ of $X_{r}$ to be calculated. Continuing this calculation until $X_{r}$ approximates $X_{r-1}$
yields the solutions for $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}$ 。
By definition, each subconstruct scale $S_{i}$ has $0 \leqslant x_{i} \leqslant 1$. It should therefore not be difficult to chose $X_{o}$ and it would be convenient and reasonable to set each $\left(X_{i}\right)_{o}=\frac{1}{2}$.

To illustrate the two methods of solving for $X$, suppose in Figure 12

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x_{1}=\frac{1}{2} x_{2}+\frac{1}{2} x_{3}+\frac{1}{4} t_{1}+\frac{1}{2} t_{2}+\frac{1}{4} t_{3} \\
& x_{2}= \\
& \frac{1}{4} x_{3}+\frac{1}{2} t_{1}+\frac{1}{4} t_{2}+\frac{1}{2} t_{3} \\
& x_{3}= \\
& \frac{1}{2} t_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

then

$$
\begin{gathered}
x_{1} x_{1} x_{2} x_{3} \quad\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
x_{1} & t_{2} & t_{3} \\
0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right] \quad B=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right] \\
{\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{2} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{lll}
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{lll}
\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{1} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
t_{3}
\end{array}\right]}
\end{gathered}
$$

Using the inversion method,

$$
\begin{aligned}
X & =(I-A)^{-1} B T \quad \text { (from equation [2]) } \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{lll}
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{8} & \frac{11}{16} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{5}{8} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
t_{3}
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Suppose the test scores on the scales $T_{1}, T_{2}, T_{3}$ were 1, 0, 1
then $\left[\begin{array}{l}t_{1} \\ t_{2} \\ t_{3}\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}1 \\ 0 \\ 1\end{array}\right]$
and $\left[\begin{array}{l}x_{1} \\ x_{2} \\ x_{3}\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}\frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{4} & \frac{11}{8} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{5}{8} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}1 \\ 0 \\ 1\end{array}\right]$

$$
=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{19}{16} \\
\frac{9}{8} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]
$$

thus

$$
x_{1}=\frac{19}{16}, x_{2}=\frac{9}{8}, x_{3}=\frac{1}{2}
$$

Using the iterative method,

$$
x_{r}=A X_{r-1}+B I \quad \text { (Erom equation }[3] \text { ) }
$$

Supposing $\left(x_{i}\right)_{0}=\frac{1}{2}$, and substituting the values for $A, B$ and $T$,

$$
X_{0}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{1}{2} \\
\frac{1}{2} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right] \quad X_{1}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
\frac{9}{8} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right] \quad x_{2}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{19}{16} \\
\frac{9}{8} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]
$$

$$
x_{3}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{19}{16} \\
\frac{9}{8} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right] \quad \text { (see page } 226 \text { for proof) }
$$

Since $\mathrm{x}_{2}=\mathrm{x}_{3}$, this is the solution, or

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{19}{16} \\
\frac{9}{8} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]
$$

and as before $\mathrm{x}_{1}=\frac{19}{16}, \mathrm{x}_{2}=\frac{9}{8}, \mathrm{x}_{3}=\frac{1}{2}$.

The solution for X using the inversion and iterative methods is not unique to this example (see page for another example). While algebraic characters have been used to represent the terms from the theoretical model, it is a simple matter to translate these characters into the theoretical terms. For example, in Figure 2, suppose $x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}, t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}$ are scores on scales $S_{1}$ 。 $S_{2}, S_{3}, T_{1}, T_{2}, T_{3}$ and that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{S}_{1}=\text { 'problem drinking' } \\
& \mathrm{S}_{2}=\text { 'craving for more' } \\
& \mathrm{S}_{3}=\text { 'dependent on alcohol' } \\
& \mathrm{T}_{1}=\text { 'would like to drink less' } \\
& \mathrm{T}_{2}=\text { 'drinking to get rid of trembling' } \\
& \mathrm{T}_{3}=\text { 'morning nausea' }
\end{aligned}
$$

then one possible combination of these scales is shown in Figure $\quad\left(S_{2}-T_{3}\right.$ have been drawn from chapter three.

Figure 3. Possible relationships between scales


In the mathematics of this example, $t_{1}, t_{2}$, $t_{3}$ were set at $1,0,1$ respectively. If the test scales $T_{1}$ 。 $T_{2}, T_{3}$ had possible $t_{i}$ values of only 0 and 1 (in the mathematical model, $t_{i}$ can be continuous), then in Figure 13 the person would like to drink less ( $t_{1}=1$ ). is not drinking to get rid of trembling ( $t_{2}=0$ ), and does have morning nausea ( $t_{3}=1$ ). These results are related by the coefficients in matrix $B$ to $x_{1}, x_{2}$ and $x_{3}$ scores for construct scale $S_{1}$ and subconstruct scales $S_{2}, S_{3}$ respectively. The scores $x_{2}$ and $X_{3}$ are similarly related to $x_{1}$ in $S_{1}$ by the coefficients in matrix $A$. If the subconstruct scales $S_{2}, S_{3}, T_{1}, T_{2}$ and $T_{3}$ were in fact related to the problem drinking construct scale $S_{1}$ in this way, then test scores of 1,0 and 1 would result in a problem drinking score of $\frac{19}{16}$. The maximum score would be $\frac{25}{16}$ ( $T$ scores of $1,1,1$ ) and the minimum 0 (T scores of $0,0,0$ ) (see page 228 for the derivation of the maximum and minimum values).

In practice the relationship between the subconstruct scales and the derivation of a final problem drinking score will be much more complex than the simplistic example in Figure 3. However, it is expected that generally the process for computing a problem drinking score would be similar, given that the coefficients in the linear relationships between the scales are known. It is not the purpose of the mathematics to explain a method for deriving a problem drinking score on the basis of actual test results on subconstruct scales. This cannot be done, since the coefficients relating the scales are not known, although their existence is assumed. The purpose of the mathematics to translate the construct idea into a plausible structure which can be used as a basis for research. It would be reasonable,
for example, to derive a test with items measuring single subconstructs with scores which may be summed according to empirically derived weightings, to produce a total score.

There is, however, a simple case when all $a_{i j}$ of $A$ are 0.

Since

$$
X=A X+B T \quad \text { from [1] }
$$

When

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a_{i j} \text { from } A=0 \\
& X=B T
\end{aligned}
$$

or

$$
\begin{align*}
& x_{i} \text { of } X \text { are dependent on the test results } \\
& t_{j} \text { of } T \text { and the coefficients } b_{i j} \text { of } B \text {, or } \\
& x_{i}=b_{i 1} t_{i}+b_{i 2} t_{2}+\ldots b_{i m} t_{m} \\
& \text { when } a_{i j}=0 \\
& =  \tag{4}\\
& { }_{j=1}^{m} b_{i j} t_{j}
\end{align*}
$$

That is, the score $x_{i}$ is the sum of the test results ighted by coefficients $b_{i j}$.

Figure 4. A tree structure with only one level of subconstructs


In Figure 4 for example, the problem drinking score depends only on one level of subconstructs. Setting these subconstruct scale scores to be $t_{i}$ of $T$ enables $a$ total score to be derived, assuming the $b_{i j}$ for each $t_{i}$ are known. Empirically the $b_{i j}$ are the test item weightings. Thus, the simple case represented by equation [4] has direct experimental application.

The mathematical model does have limitations which are built into the following assumptions:

1. The relationship between the subconstruct scales is linear.
2. The coefficients connecting the scales in the linear equations exist.
3. All subconstruct scale scores lay between and including 0 and 1 . This restriction does not hold for the final score on the construct scale.
4. The subconstructs represent the content domain of the problem drinking construct.

In summary, the purpose of the mathematics model is to translate the terms from the theoretical construct into a structure which describes in a simple way, how these terms could be related to each other. This structure describes a means for determining a problem drinking score from the results of tests which are at the end points of a variety of interrelated subconstruct scales. The tests are subconstructs of problem drinking whose scale scores interact with other subconstructs. It is assumed that these interactions are known and can be represented by linear equations which determine a
final score on the problem drinking construct scale. It is also assumed that the subconstructs in the structure represent the content domain of the problem drinking construct. Given that the structure relating subconstruct scales to the construct scale is known, then the mathematical model gives two matrix methods for determining the score on any of these scales from test results.

When there is only one level of subconstructs, these become the tests whose results are summed according to their weightings to give the final score.

## MATHEMATICAL PROOFS AND EXAMPLES

(1) Proof that with the inversion method,

$$
X=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
\frac{1}{2} & & \frac{3}{8} & \frac{11}{16} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \cdot & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{5}{8} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
t_{3}
\end{array}\right]
$$

Fig. 12


Equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x_{1}=\frac{1}{2} x_{2}+\frac{1}{2} x_{3}+\frac{1}{4} t_{1}+\frac{1}{2} t_{2}+\frac{1}{4} t_{3} \\
& x_{2}=\frac{1}{4} x_{3}+\frac{1}{2} t_{1}+\frac{1}{4} t_{2}+\frac{1}{2} t_{3} \\
& x_{3}=
\end{aligned}
$$

Since

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=A X+B T \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right] \quad B=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right] \\
& x=\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

then substituting $X, A, B$ and $T$ into [1]

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
t_{3}
\end{array}\right]
$$

Transforming (1)

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
X-A X & =B T & \text { from [1] } \\
X(I-A) & =B T & \\
X & =(I-A)^{-1} B T & {[2]}
\end{array}
$$

Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
(I-A) & =\left[\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]-\left[\begin{array}{lll}
0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right] \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Calculating (I-A) ${ }^{-1}$ by row operators

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\begin{array}{cccccc}
1 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{4} & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]} \\
& {\left[\begin{array}{cccccc}
1 & 0 & -\frac{3}{8} & 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\
0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{4} & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\begin{array}{llllll} 
& R_{1} & R_{1} & \frac{3}{8} R_{3} \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{8} \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & R_{2} \\
& & & & \frac{1}{4} R_{3} \\
0 & & & &
\end{array}\right]}
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence

$$
(I-A)^{-1}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
1 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{8} \\
0 & 1 & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
$$

Substituting the values for $(I-A)-1, B, T$ and $X$ in [2]

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{lllllll}
1 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{8} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & t_{1} \\
0 & 1 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & t_{2} \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & t_{3}
\end{array}\right]} \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{8} & \frac{1}{16} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{5}{8} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
t_{3}
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

| When | $\left[\begin{array}{l}{\left[\begin{array}{l}t_{1} \\ t_{2} \\ t_{3}\end{array}\right]} \\ \text { then }\end{array} \quad=\left[\begin{array}{l}1 \\ 0 \\ x_{2} \\ x_{1} \\ x_{3}\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}\frac{19}{16} \\ \frac{9}{8} \\ \frac{1}{2}\end{array}\right]\right.$ |
| ---: | :--- |

(2) Proof that using the iterative method with the example in (1),

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{19}{16} \\
\frac{9}{8} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]
$$

Given

$$
X_{r}=A X_{r-1}+B T
$$

and that

$$
X_{0}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{1}{2} \\
\frac{1}{2} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]
$$

then substituting the values for $A, B$ and $T$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& X_{1}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
\frac{1}{2} \\
\frac{1}{2} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{lll}
\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
0 \\
1
\end{array}\right] \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{l}
\frac{1}{2} \\
\frac{1}{8} \\
0
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{l}
\frac{1}{2} \\
1 \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
\frac{9}{\theta} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right] \\
& X_{2}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
\frac{9}{B} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{l}
\frac{1}{2} \\
1 \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right] \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{11}{16} \\
1 \\
\frac{8}{2} \\
0
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{1}{2} \\
1 \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{19}{16} \\
9 \\
\frac{8}{8} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right] \\
& X_{3}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{19}{16} \\
\frac{9}{8} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{1}{2} \\
1 \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

$=\left[\begin{array}{c}\frac{11}{16} \\ = \\ \frac{1}{8} \\ 0\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}\frac{1}{2} \\ 1 \\ \frac{1}{2}\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}\frac{19}{16} \\ \frac{9}{8} \\ \frac{1}{2}\end{array}\right]$
$X_{2}=X_{3}$ and so a solution has been reached, and
$\left[\begin{array}{l}x_{1} \\ x_{2} \\ x_{3}\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}\frac{19}{16} \\ \frac{9}{8} \\ \frac{1}{2}\end{array}\right]$
(3) Calculating the maximum value for the example in (1).

The maximum scores are

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
t_{3}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
1 \\
1
\end{array}\right]
$$

From (1)

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{8} & \frac{11}{16} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{5}{8} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
t_{3}
\end{array}\right]
$$

Substituting the values $t_{1}=t_{2}=t_{3}=1$ gives

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{25}{16} \\
\frac{11}{8} \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right]
$$

Since $x_{1}$ is the final score on $S_{1}$, the maximum score is $\frac{25}{16}$.
(4) Calculating the minimum value for the example in (1). The minimum scores are

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
t_{3}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
0 \\
0 \\
0
\end{array}\right]
$$

Since this vector contains all zeros, so does any product with it, and so from (1),

$$
\left[\begin{array}{ll}
x_{1} & \\
& \\
X_{2} & \\
& \\
x_{2} & \\
& 3
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
0 \\
0 \\
0
\end{array}\right]
$$

and the minimum score $x_{1}$ on $S_{1}$ is 0 .
(5) A further example, involving 8 scales, $S_{1} \ldots S_{4}$, $T_{1} \ldots T_{4}$ with respective $x_{i}$ for $S_{i}$ and $t_{i}$ for $T_{i}$.

The hypothetical score tree is shown in the following figure.


From the figure it can be observed that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x_{1}=f\left(x_{2}, x_{3}, x_{4}\right) \\
& x_{2}=f\left(x_{3}, x_{4}, t_{1}\right) \\
& x_{3}=f\left(t_{2}, t_{3}\right) \\
& x_{4}=f\left(x_{2}, x_{3}, t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{4}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Suppose these functions can be represented by the equations

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
x_{1}=\frac{1}{2} x_{2}+\frac{1}{2} x_{3}+\frac{1}{4} x_{4} \\
x_{2}= & \frac{1}{4} x_{3}+\frac{1}{2} x_{4}+\frac{1}{2} t_{1} \\
x_{3}= & \frac{1}{4} t_{2}+\frac{1}{4} t_{3} \\
x_{4}= & \frac{1}{4} x_{2}+\frac{1}{2} x_{3}+\quad \frac{1}{2} t_{1}+\frac{1}{2} t_{2}+\frac{1}{4} t_{4}
\end{array}
$$

Since

$$
X=(I-A)^{-1} B T \quad \text { from [2] }
$$

and

$$
\begin{gathered}
x_{1} x_{2} x_{3} \\
A=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
x_{3} & x_{4} \\
0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & 0
\end{array}\right] B=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
t_{1} & t_{2} & t_{3} & t_{4} \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} & 0 \\
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{4}
\end{array}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

then

$$
\begin{aligned}
(I-A) & =\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]-\left[\begin{array}{llll}
0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & 0
\end{array}\right] \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{4} \\
0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & -\frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{2} & 1
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Calculating $(I-A)^{-1}$ by row operators and converting to decimals

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cccccccc}
1 & -.500 & -.500 & -.250 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & -.250 & -.500 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & -.250 & -.500 & 1 & 0 . & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\lvert\, \begin{array}{l}
R_{1}=R_{1}+0.500 R_{2} \\
R_{4}=R_{4}+0.25 R_{2}
\end{array}\right. \\
& {\left[\begin{array}{cccccccc}
1 & 0 & -.625 & -.500 & 1 & .500 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & -.250 & -.500 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -.563 & .875 & 0 & .250 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]} \\
& \left\lvert\, \begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{R}_{1}=\mathrm{R}_{1}+.625 \mathrm{R}_{3} \\
\mathrm{R}_{2}=\mathrm{R}_{2}+.250 \mathrm{R}_{3} \\
\mathrm{R}_{4}=\mathrm{R}_{4}+.563 \mathrm{R}_{3}
\end{array}\right. \\
& {\left[\begin{array}{cccccccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & -.500 & 1 & .500 & .625 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & -\ldots .500 & 0 & 1 & .250 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & .875 & 0 & .250 & .563 & 1
\end{array}\right]}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\left[\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & -0.500 & 1 & R_{4}= & R_{4} / .800 & .625 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & -.500 & 0 & 1 & .250 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & .286 & .643 & 1.143
\end{array}\right]
$$

Hence

$$
(I-A)^{-1}\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & .643 & .947 & .572 \\
0 & 1.143 & .573 & .572 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & .286 & .643 & 1.143
\end{array}\right]
$$

and $(I-A)^{-1} \cdot(I-A)=I$

Suppose

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
t_{1} \\
t_{2} \\
t_{3} \\
t_{4}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
0 \\
1 \\
0
\end{array}\right]
$$

Since

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3} \\
x_{4}
\end{array}\right]=(I-A)^{-1} B T \quad \text { from [2] }
$$

Substituting the values into this equation gives

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3} \\
x_{4}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
1 & .643 & .947 & .572 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 1.143 & .573 & .572 & .500 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & .250 & .250 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & .286 & .643 & 1.143 & .500 & .500 & 0 & .250 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

$=\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}.608 & .523 & .237 & .143 & 1 \\ .858 & .429 & .143 & .143 & 0 \\ 0 & .250 & .250 & 0 & 1 \\ .715 & .732 & .161 & .286 & 0\end{array}\right]$

$$
=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.845 \\
1.001 \\
.250 \\
.873
\end{array}\right]
$$

and so the final score $x_{1}$ on scale $S_{1}$ is 0.845 .

Iteratively, the calculation is simpler.
Given
and

$$
X_{r}=A X_{r-1}+B T
$$

$$
\mathrm{X}_{0}=\left[\begin{array}{l}
.500 \\
.500 \\
.500 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& X_{1}=\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
0 & .500 & .500 & .250 & .500 \\
0 & 0 & .250 & .500 & .500 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & .500 \\
0 & .250 & .500 & 0 & .500
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
.500 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & .250 & .250 & 0 & 1 \\
.500 & .500 & 0 & .250 & 0
\end{array}\right] \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{c}
.625 \\
.375 \\
0 \\
.375
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.625 \\
.875 \\
.250 \\
.875
\end{array}\right] \\
& X_{2}=\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
0 & .500 & .500 & .250 & .625 \\
0 & 0 & .250 & .500 & .875 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & .250 \\
0 & .250 & .500 & 0 & .875
\end{array}\right]+\quad\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right] \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{c}
.781 \\
.500 \\
0 \\
.344
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.781 \\
1.000 \\
.250 \\
.844
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly,

$$
\mathrm{X}_{3}=\mathrm{A}\left[\begin{array}{r}
.781 \\
1.000 \\
.250 \\
.844
\end{array}\right]+\mathrm{BT}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
= & {\left[\begin{array}{c}
.836 \\
.485 \\
0 \\
.375
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.836 \\
.985 \\
.250 \\
.875
\end{array}\right] } \\
X_{4} & =\mathrm{A}\left[\begin{array}{c}
.836 \\
.985 \\
.250 \\
.875
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.036 \\
.563 \\
0 \\
.371
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.836 \\
1.063 \\
.250 \\
.871
\end{array}\right]
$$

$$
X_{5}=\mathrm{A}\left[\begin{array}{r}
.836 \\
1.063 \\
.250 \\
.871
\end{array}\right]+\mathrm{BT}
$$

$$
=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.874 \\
.561 \\
0 \\
.391
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.874 \\
1.061 \\
.250 \\
.891
\end{array}\right]
$$

Similarly,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{X}_{6}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.878 \\
.508 \\
0 \\
.390
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.878 \\
1.008 \\
.250 \\
.890
\end{array}\right] \\
\\
\mathrm{X}_{7}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.852 \\
.508 \\
0 \\
.377
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.852 \\
1.008 \\
.250 \\
.877
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
X_{8}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.848 \\
.501 \\
0 \\
.377
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.848 \\
1.001 \\
.250 \\
.877
\end{array}\right]
$$

$$
X_{9}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.845 \\
.501 \\
0 \\
.375
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.845 \\
1.001 \\
.250 \\
.875
\end{array}\right]
$$

$$
\mathrm{X}_{10}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.844 \\
.500 \\
0 \\
.375
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
.500 \\
.250 \\
.500
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
.844 \\
1.000 \\
.250 \\
.875
\end{array}\right]
$$

Since $X_{9} \approx X_{10}$, this is the solution, which is also that obtained by the inverse method.

The minimum values of $x_{i}$ in $X$ occurs when all $t_{i}$ in $T$ equal 0 .

Given $X=(I-A)^{-1} B T$ from [2]
if all $t_{i}=0$ then all $x_{i}=0$. That is, when the test results are all zero, so too are all the derived scores. In the example the minimum scores are therefore

$$
x_{1}=x_{2}=x_{3}=x_{4}=0
$$

The maximum values of $X_{i}$ in $X$ are when all $t_{i}$ in $T$ equal 1 . In the example, substituting these values in equation [2] gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[\begin{array}{l}
x_{1} \\
x_{2} \\
x_{3} \\
x_{4}
\end{array}\right] } & =\left[\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
1 & .643 & .947 & .572 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 1.143 & .573 & .572 & .500 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & .250 & .250 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & .286 & .643 & 1.143 & .500 & .500 & 0 & .250 & 1
\end{array}\right] \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{c}
1.511 \\
1.573 \\
.500 \\
1.894
\end{array}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

The maximum score in this example on the final scale is 1.511, although lower level scales may at times have higher scores.

## QUESTIONNAIRES, SPSS COURSE PROGRAMME AND <br> RAW DATA FOR EXPERIMENTS I AND IV

## PATIENT ALCOHOL RELATED ILLNESS SURVEY

Name:
Code No. 1-7

"My name is ....... and I am Erom the Department of Preventive and Commaity Medicine. I am doing a survey on behalf of the Alcoholic fiquor Advisory Council, and I'm interviewing patients at Christchurch Hospital.

This survey is intended to provide information on the drinking patterns of patiants admitted to Christchurch Hospital. The questions I'd like to ask you should only take about 20 minutes."

Q 1. Do you mind participating in the survey? [1=Yes, 2=No]
Q 2. Have you taken part. in this survey before? [leYes, 2wNo, 3=Not sure]
"WE HAVE A FEW QUESTIONS ON WHEN PEOPLE DRINK BEER, WINES AND SPIRITS. WE ARE ASKING THESE QUESTIONS OF EVERYBODY, SO WE CAN GET AN AVERAGE PICTURE FOR ALL PATIENTS."

Q 3. Do you drink alcohol at all? (IF NO, GO TO Q.44)
2 4. Can you tell me when you last drank alcohol?
[1] Less than 12 hours ago
[2] 13-23 hours ago
[3] One to four days before
[4] Five to thirteen days before
11 []
[5] Two to three weeks before
$[6]$ Over three weeks but leag than sis months
[7] Six months or more
Q 5. On an average drinking occasion, can you tell me the number and type of each drink you would have?
[Examples of measures, 1 large glass of beer, 3 jugs of beer, 2 nips of spirits, half a bottle of wine etc.l

> Number and type of measure

1. Beer $\qquad$ 12-14

2. Spirits $\qquad$ 15-17

3. Forvified Wine
(Sherry, Port, vermouth)
4. Table wine
5. Other beverages $\qquad$
TOTAL
Q 6. How long is it on the average between drinking occasions?

18-20


24-26


27-30

| [1] Less than 12 hours | Days |
| :--- | ---: |
| [2] One ad | 1 |
| [3] Two to Lour days | 2 |
| [4] Five to thirteen days | 3 |
| [5] Two to three weeks | 20 |
| [6] Over three weeks but less than sis months | 30 |
| [7] Six months or more | 200 |

Calculate $\frac{\text { Total }}{\text { Days }}-241-$

## Score

Q 7．Approximately how much would you spend on yourself on an averaga dsinking occasion？

2 8．Have any close faily members such as parent．brothes or sister had drinking problems？
［1］Yea
［2］No
［3］Not sure
9．9．［IE yes］What was the relationship？
［1］Parent
［2］Brother／aister
［3］Children
［4］Spouse or partner
［5］Combination of above
［6］Other

IE SCORE IS LESS THAN 3 GO TO Q．44
＂NOW I＇M GOING TO READ OUT SOME QUESTIONS AND I＇D LIKE YOU TO ANSWER YES OR NO TO EACH ONE．＂

Q 10．Do you feel you are a normal drinker？（By normal we mean you drink less than or as much as most other peoplef）

2 11．Does your wife，husband，a parent，or other near relative ever worry or complain about your drinking？

Q 12．Do you ever Eeel guilty about your drinking？
Q 13．Do friends or relatives thtnk you are a nomal drinker？
Q 14．Are you able to stop drinking when you want tof
Q 15．Have you ever attended a meeting of Alcoholics Anonymous？
Q 16．Has drinking ever created problems between you and your wife， husband，parent，or other near relative？
Q 17．Have you evex been in trouble at work because of drinking？
Q 18．Have you ever neglected youx obligations，your family or your work for two or more days in a row because you were drinking？

Q 19．Have you ever gone to nnyone for help about your drinking？（Yes）
Q 20．Have you ever been in a hospital because of drinking？
$Q$ 21．Have you ever been arrested for dxunker driving，driving while intoricated，or dxiving under the ingluence of alcoholic beverages？

Q 22．Have you ever been arrested，evon for \＆fow hours，because of other drunken behaviour？
（YES）
［QUESTIONS 23－43，YES＝1，NO＝2］

Q 23．Have you found that your hands have been trembling a lot recently？
Q 24．Do you sometimes have feelings of nausea in the morning？
48 ［］
49 ［］

50 ［ ］
Q 26．At the moment do you feel miserable because of any problems or difficulties related to your drinking？

Q 27．Do you drink before lunch fairly often？
2 28．After the first glass or two af alcohol do you ever feel a craving for more？

Q 29．Are you preoccupied with thoughts about alcohol？
Q 30．Do you sometimes drink alcohol even against your doctor＇s advice？
Q 31．When you drink a lot of alcohol，do you tend to eat less？
Q 32．Have you ever been criticized at work because of your drinking？
Q 33．Do you prefer to drink alone？
51【 〕
52 ［ ］

Q 34．Do you think you＇ve been in worse shape since you started drinking？

Q 35．Do you ever have a guilty conscience about drinking？
Q 36．Have you ever felt it necessary to limit your drinking to certain occasions of to certain times of the day？
Q 37．Do you feel you should drink less？
Q 38．Do you think that without alcohol you would have fewer problems？
$Q$ 39．When you＇re upset do you drink alcohol to calm down？
Q 40．Are there times when you＇d like to stop drinking？
Q41．Would you get along better with your spouse／partner／the people you＇re closest to if you dida＇t drink？
2 42．Have you ever deliberately tried to do without any alcohol at all？
2 43．Have you often been told that your breath smells of alcohol？

60 ［ ］

61［ ］
62 ［ ］
63 ［ 1
64 ［ 〕
65 ［ ］

66 ［ ］
67 （ $]$
68 ［ ］


Q 44．Finally，I＇d like to ask a few questions about yourself．Firstly，can you tell me in which year you were born？
Q 45．And what is your present marital status？
［1］married
［2］separated
［3］divorced
［4］de facto
［5］single
［6］widowed
Q 46．Lastly，are you presently in employment？
Sex $(M=1, E=2)$
Ward
Date（day／month）

10 【 〕

11 ［ ］
12 ［ ］

$17-20$


## EIEE HISTORY

1．Fila present

```
21 （1）
```

2．Number of previous admissions（Ch．Ch．and other hospitals） 10，2，2，3，5ugreatex than 31

Surgical bed
Medical bed
psychlatxic bed
Maternity bed
3．1mYes，2mNot cleax
T，B．
Peptle or bleeding ulcer
26 ［ ］
27 （J
28 【 ！
29 ！
30 ［ ］
31 ｜
32【1
33 （ ）
34 ［1
35 ［ ］
36 ！ 1
37 （
38 （ 1
39 『 d
40 ［ ］
41 ［1

4211
43 ！！
44 （ ）
45 ［ ］
46 【 〕

4711
48 ［1
49－55

|  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

BLOOD TESTS

1．SMAC


2．MCV

SUMMARY
Form 1．Complete
2．Missing MCV
19 ！」

3．Missing SMAC
20 ［ ］

4．Missing clinical exam
21 ［ ］

5．Patient refused
22 【
23 ！］
6．Patient incapable
24 【 〕
7．Patient died
25 ［］
8．Incomplate for other reason

## Attention Resident Medical Officer

Could you please complete this form if any one or more of the symptoms listed are present.

In addition it would be useful if both a SMAC and MCV test are requested as part of the routine admission of all adult patients during this study.

This form is to remain in the chart notes.

PLEASE AFFIX PATIENT IDENTIFICATION LABEL HERE

Please acknowledge you have seen this form

Tick if present

PALPABLE LIVER


JAUNDICE


SPIDER ANGIOMATA


DUPUYTRENS CONTRACTURES


OTHER ALCOHOL RELATED PHYSICAL SYMMPTOMS
(Please specify)
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
RECODE
RECODE
RECOOE
MISSING VALUES
HISS RNG VALUES
COHPUTE
IF
ASSIGN MISSING
RECODE
RECODE
RECOUE
RECODE
VAR ZABELS
RECOOE
HISSING VALUES
compute
if
aecooe
RECODE
var labels
 AG，O45，O4G，ЗEX，HARO，ONTE，F2L TO F4日，PLET，PNUA，SMOT，SHTM．
（GnT）


INT TO OL，AG TO SB（DLANK－9999）
01 YO 09 （BLANKMo
alo To $041(9 \mathrm{mo})$
04 TO TOR，AG，WARD，DATE，PNUH TO MCV19999
7NT，QL TO 03,06 TO 043，045 TO SEX，F2L TO P40，
AGEEBL－AG
（AGE Lir 1）AcE：AGE 100
ACE（9999）
phos（to That $29=1$ ）（ 30 That $120=2$ ）（ 121 THRU 9000．03）
cot（co thaU $14 \times 1$ ）（35 TARU $49=2)(50$ THRU 9000＝3）


N PATIENT NuHBER／
IHT INTERUIENER／，
PIIS SURVEY PHASE／
OL SURVEY．PARTICIPATIONT／
02 PREV IOUSLY SORvEYED？
03 DRHE ALCOHOL AT ALL？
o4 LAST DRANK ALCOHOL？
ge last dra
SPAT SP Inims，
FRTV FORTIFIED NINE／
TAHW TAnLE WINE／
TOT NOTAL CORSUAED ：MLS or pune alcohol
Q6 HOU OFTEN DO you DRINK？／
of How mucit oo you spewo？／．
OS FAMILY ALCOHOL PROBLEHS？／
OY HIICH FAMILX MEMDERS？
010 MAST $01 /$
$\begin{array}{lll}011 & \text { HAST } & 02 / \\ 012 & \text { HAST } & 03\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{ll}\text { Ol } \\ \text { OLJ HAST } \\ \text { HAST } & 04 /\end{array}$
Q14 HAST O5／
Q15 HAST 06／
$\begin{array}{ll}016 & \text { HAST } 07 / \\ 017 & \text { HAST } 09 /\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{ll}0.7 & \text { HAST } \\ 018 \\ \text { MAST } & 09 /\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{ll}019 \\ 019 & \text { MAST } 10 /\end{array}$
020 Wast il／
22 HAST 12 ，
022 MAST $13 /$
023 mate onf
02：MALC 02／
925 MALT $01 /$
026 MALS 04
027 HALT 65 ／
028 HALT O6／
029 HALT 07／
Qjo HALZ 08；
011
012 HALT 09 （
01
012 HALT 10
034 katw $12 /$
035 halt ijf
036 Malt 14／

$\begin{array}{ll}038 \\ 039 \text { HALT } & 16 / \% \\ 040 & 18 /\end{array}$
Q39 HALT
Q40 HALT
Q4
042
OAL
MALT
19
$20 / 9$
Q42 MALT
043
20
21
QACE AGE／
Q4S HARFT
retal status／
946 pRESENTLY EMPLOYED？／
HARD WARO
HaRD NARD／；
DATE GATE／
P21 FILE phesent
P22 SURGICAL ADMISS IONS；
21 HEDICAL ADMtSSIONS：
F24 PSyciliatuic adutssions，
F25 haternity admiss ions，
26 muencutos 15
27 pEPTIC On aLEROLNG ULCER／
2a Phicheatiris／
pig MEG\＃aloon phessunc／
p10 Hepaticis／
F11 JAUNDICE／
11 Jaundice
12 Liver DISEASE ：crannosis／
14 clnowic anc
14 cinrome browcirus／
I6 hewory ol
536 HEHORY DISORDER
37 NuTRTTION／

F40 wentitinal neulltis／
F4t SUICIDE ATTEAPT／
42 PALPAGLE LivER／
F41 JAbnoice／
P\＆SPIDEA ANGYOMATA／
FA5 DUPUYTRENS CONTRACTURES／
46 OTHER
P4 CLINICAL EXAM CHECKEDR／
P4B ENTAY DOINT
PLET PATEEM
PuUM NUMOER
shot Shac date／
SHTM SMAC TIME／
PHOS AGKALIME PHOSPIATE ：DU pER LITRE／
cer canta GT：tu pen litred
AST AST ：IU PEA LITHE／
MDT HCV OATE／
MTM HCV TIME／
CV hean celc volune／
si COMPLETE／
52 MISSING MCV／
s）MISEINO SMAC／
34 NISS inG CLINICAL ExAM／
55 PaTient Refused／
6 Patiens inchanale／
so thoumpletw bon omen nensor／
iNe（2）Jan
（3）Bellada
（4）Melek
（5）Lind
（6）Pam
（a）Gett
（9）चisedna Dabe
（990）Diank，

2） Ho
$9) \mathrm{MO}$
9）Aisaing Data
02
（2）No
（i）Not sur
（9）Hiasimg Data
03
（1）You
（2）No
（9）Missim Dec

0
（2） $13-23 \mathrm{hr}$
（1） $5-13 \mathrm{day}$ befor
（5） $3-13$ way before
（6））Зwatke batore
（7）5 Swonthe
（a）Special
（s）spectal
（9999）BLank／
beer to orna（1） $10=50$ ma
51 － 100 191
$101-200$ als
（3） $101=200$ 日ls
（5） $301-300$ zils
（5） 400 日l
（6）$\quad 401=500 \mathrm{mls}$
（7）$\quad 501-999 \mathrm{mLs}$
(4) $201-300 \mathrm{ming}$
$301=400$ 日1s
7) $501=1000 \mathrm{ml}$
$1001=2000$ nis
() $2001-3000$ nis
(1) $400 \mathrm{~A}=5000$ al
(9499) $800 \mathrm{ank} / 5000 \mathrm{als}$

1） 12 hrs
2）one day
1）2－4 day
（1） $5-13$ days
（5） $2-3$ week
$61>3$ ank
7）$>6$ monthe＜6monthe
9 Misaing oata
$9999)$ 日lant，
07 （1） 531.00
（2）$\$ 1.01-\$ 3.00$
（） 55.01 － 58.00
（5） 3 \＄a．00
（7）Oon＇t Know
（9）Missing Data
ga
（1）Y Biank／
（2）No
（3）Not Sure
（9）Alasing Data
（1999）Blank／
（1）Pacent
（J）chilacen
（4）Pacturer
（5）combinta ofnbove
（5）0ther
（9）Mlusing aat
（99991 8lank／
010 To g22（1）Score
（9）Missing pata
（1）Yeq）Blanh／
021 T0 0．3 11）yen
（2）No
（9）मissing Data
ACE
（1） $15-20$
（2） $21-30$
（4） $31-40$
（5）52－60
（5） $51-60$
$(6) 51-70$
（6） $71-70$
（a） $81-90$
（9） $90 \%$
（9999）Blank／
（2）Seperate
iJioivoreed
（1）be racto
（s）single
（6）H1 dowed
（9）Hissing Data
46 （1i）Yee ank
（1）No
（9）Hisalno Date
（9999）alank／
sex（1）Hala
（2）Fessle
（9）Misaing Data
19夕991 日lank／
WARO liforthpile
folorthpalle
nojorthpale
（11）Genito－urinary
（12）General surgery
lingeneral Surgery
（25）Gastro
（26）Genersl Sucgery
（20）Heurolgy
（29）Ilaemato Invuno
（J0）Radiolgy
（J1）Ophthol
（12）Eas Hose s Throse
（9999）Blank／
Q2t（1）yes
（2）Ho
9）Wisaing Data
（9999）alank／
F22 to pas in wisaling oata
199991 alant／





| 223210600 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 131486613711052316071023682 |
| 202263191612001 302261110620540 | 1. |  |
| 1022171221180 | 40423 |  |
| 3021771141210013090613100 |  | 32 APO 730600061517781010 |
| 302377106061340 as |  |  |
| 10228712218180000 | 603136 |  |
| 2022271471110026170023000 <br> 302387110060035 938 |  | stanuzsastoorlioso di as 18 |
| 102298 |  |  |
| 2022971096220025110610000 |  | 6607310062043 |
| 30229711006195085 |  |  |
| 1023071224320 | 20612 |  |
| 20230710312160251106150 | 8 | a1accse141006234710311238 |
| 30230711106 97 |  |  |
| 20.202171615220026110611101 |  |  |
| 2023171615230026110611101 |  | alarvasco |
| 30231711106 -19 |  |  |
| 1023271222 |  |  |
| ${ }_{30232711006}^{202371036220025110623100 ~}$ |  | 12maps80020062041507 87 66 |
| 1023131228 |  |  |
| 2023371946210025110620000 |  | SAARYS62310062735112 |
| 302137120061520 B68 |  |  |
| 10214712317160 | 1603 |  |
| 20234711712100181106118 |  | 21apH06721006203684713744 |
| 3023971 102571221780011 |  |  |
| 8033572238700 | 6022] |  |
| 3023571231210012110620010 |  | 21aprssod |
| 1023671212 |  |  |
|  |  | atanvospaloochibs 681220 |
| 30236711108 <br> 1023771228 |  |  |
| 2023771625120026180610000 |  | B2aRl 1402 |
| 3023771 |  |  |
| 10235722216 | 8063 |  |
| 2023871472220026110612 |  | 32ARV2615 |
| 30238711206 88 11 |  |  |
| 2023471222 |  |  |
| ${ }^{2023971172220026110611000 ~}$ | 1 | 12alvor371006151148 7821 |
| 30739711006 10240712213 | 2004313 |  |
| 2024071201220026120612100 |  | S2ARS186080061509 702218 |
| $30240711006141091 \quad 1$ |  |  |
| 1021171222 |  |  |
| 2024171271110012120610000 | 1 | 22anp383010061262 3817 |
| 30241711006 日9 8 |  |  |
|  | 806113 | 240040031106232011398 |
| $\begin{aligned} & 2024271082210025120612 \\ & 3024271106191679 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| 2024371222 218 |  |  |
| 2024371061210026120615000 | 1 | 21ADC778011061533102103 3 l |
| 3024371810870 |  |  |
| 10246712214 | 305 |  |
| 2024671615120036120610000 |  | 24arvs09111061632 A8 20 |
| 30244711106 BS. 1 |  |  |
| 10029371222 |  |  |
| ${ }_{3024571}^{30247206220025120613203}$ |  | 31apt7879 |
| 3024571 10246712323 | 1043 |  |
| 2026671051210012120612000 |  | 32AES5176 |
| 3026671 - 111 |  |  |
| 10247712218 20247711628025150615000 | 20713 |  |
| 2024771116230035150615000 |  | sc799s |
| 3024771 L |  |  |
| ${ }^{1024071222}$ 20, |  |  |
| 2014171161110026150512000 $30248711306 \quad 948$ | 1 | satar 273013062055109 so 12 |
| 2034971222 |  |  |
| 2029971066220026150610001 |  | 13ARU3506 |
|  | 906 |  |
| 3025071461220012150612002 |  | 21aprofe312061521450375 |
| 302507112061345 \%8 1 |  |  |
| 1025271221650 | 3068 |  |
| 3022272035210025150610300 |  | 21AROS04413062324802334 44 |
| 30252711306 1025371215 $0^{\text {by }}$ |  |  |
| 2025371402220025150613100 | 1053 | 11aco 31631306321532310437 |
| 309537143066418 871 |  |  |
| 1025431222 |  |  |
| 2025431051120011160625 |  | L2ARU760415065350080013008 |
| 3025631450613300921 |  |  |
| 20253310013160641 |  | 12APY818712061526103037028 |
| 302553112061445078 \& |  |  |
| 102563112 |  |  |
|  | 1 | 32anas97315068360111033018 |
| 3025631130613450y8 |  |  |
| 2025731222710013160615 |  | 22ala012013062057063030006 |
| 2025731111110013160625 102573113061000080 |  |  |
| 10258422211 | 30223 | 221222222222232222222 |
| 2025642271110007120611 |  | 11ARL615312060850 461019 |
| 302504212060850911 |  |  |
| 10239412214 40 | 10423 |  |
| 2025941141210011160615 302594145062300962 |  | 12ACG 351015061300 e9 39 |
| ${ }_{202604}^{2025941406300961 ~}$ |  |  |
| 202604195121002508061330 |  | 11APR663008061030108 is 21. |
| 102614 |  |  |
| 20261411762200071006121 30261410906138017 |  | 2ARU257709061340 21 12 28 |
| ${ }^{30262412214}$ |  |  |
| 20262411412200071006121 | 11 | 21ARUB14113061415 97 94 27 |
| 302624113061115931 |  |  |
| 10263412213150 202639165521000712061 | 60632 | H1arv6293 |
| ${ }_{3036341}^{202658166521000712061}$ |  | blakbiga |
| 1026441221 J 80 |  |  |
| 20264411712200071106151 | 1 | 13AF97368 |
| 30264411106 \% 1 |  |  |
|  | 60582 | 21 anvi797 |
| $3026541{ }^{3}$ |  |  |
| 1026641271480 | 40212 |  |
| 30260815711100081106111 |  | 31 Aeg16 67 |
| 302664110062000031 102671221360 |  |  |
| 1026741221360 2026745151100071008131 |  | 21ARLJ988 |
| 3026741 |  |  |
| 10268412316 2036441515130000090621 | 207181 |  |
| $203604151513000009061^{1} 1$ $3020841^{1}$ |  | Liafu9903 |
| $1026 \times 42321510$ | 305113 |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & 2024 \$ 421111100111606122 \\ & 302094215061100061 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & 10210623213 \\ & 20874621312300601506112 \end{aligned}$ | 1063 | 12488383912051609138 43 |





































## APPENDIX D

## CALCULATION OF LABOUR NEEDED FOR EXPERIMENT I

1. Expected number of patients able to be interviewed
(a) From medical records, the typical age distribution for patients in Christchurch Hospital is: (31.1.80 at 2400 hours).

Table 1

|  | 0-1 | $2-5$ | $6-10$ | $11-15$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ge lyea } \\ & 16=20 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 2151 \\ & 24-30 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} N= \\ 31-40 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 405 \\ & 41-50 \end{aligned}$ | $51-60$ | 61-70 | 71-80 | $>60$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| N | 10 | 15 | 13 | 12 | 27 | 49 | 26 | 27 | 42 | 84 | 70 | 30 |
| \% | 2 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 7 | 12 | 6 | 7 | 10 | 21 | 17 | 7 |
| cums | 2 | 6 | 9 | 12 | 19 | 31 | 37 | 44 | 54 | 75 | 92 | 99 |

(b) The average number of new admissions per day can be calculated from the monthly new admissions:

Table 2

(c) On the basis of an unpublished report by fifth year medical students on the prevalence of alcoholism in Christchurch Hospital during the summer of $1973-74,11 \%$ of patients were discharged before interview, $7 \%$ were not able to be interviewed, $3 \%$ died, $2 \%$ were too young (< 15 years). However, table 1 suggests $13 \%<15$ years. Mean $\%<15$ yrs $=8$. Thus $11+7+3+8=29 \%$ not able to be interviewed.
(d) From (b) and (c), the mean number of patients able to be interviewed per week $=(100-29) \times 340$
$=241 /$ week.
2. To allow for the statistical investigation of the effects of age and sex on the problem drinking groups scores, about 100 problem drinkers are needed. Considering the likely prevalence of problem drinking (a conservative estimate is 7\%), and the numbers not able to be interviewed (29\%), then if $x$ is the number of patients required to survey,

$$
\begin{aligned}
0.07 \times(1-0.29) & =100 \\
x & =2012
\end{aligned}
$$

As there are about 241 patients per week available, it will take $2012 / 241$ or 8 weeks to obtain the sample.
3. Assuming one person could interview about 8 patients per day, then about 6 interviewers would be needed to cover the 241 patients per week for 8 weeks. Given the likely delays, trials, fluctuations and training, allow at least 12 weeks for the data collection.

## APPENDIX E

TABLES 1 TO 8 FOR EXPERIMENTS I, II AND III

## EXPERIMENT I TABLE 1

AGE, SEX AND MARITAL CHARACTERISTICS FOR 1,613 PROBIEM AND NON-PROBLEM DRINKERS USED FOR SELECIING ITEMS

|  |  |  | Cumulative <br> percent |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| Sex: |  |  |  |
| male | 856 | 53.1 | 53.1 |
| female | 746 | 46.2 | 46.6 |
| missing data | 11 | 0.7 | 100.0 |
| Age: (years) |  |  |  |
| 15-20 | 105 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| $21-30$ | 142 | 8.8 | 15.4 |
| $31-40$ | 73 | 4.5 | 19.9 |
| $41-50$ | 90 | 5.6 | 25.5 |
| $51-60$ | 161 | 10.0 | 35.5 |
| $61-70$ | 175 | 10.6 | 46.4 |
| $71-80$ | 487 | 30.2 | 76.7 |
| 81-100 | 380 | 23.3 | 99.6 |
| missing data | 6 | 0.4 | 100.0 |
| Marital status: |  |  |  |
| married | 897 | 55.6 | 55.6 |
| single | 351 | 21.8 | 77.4 |
| widowed | 261 | 16.2 | 93.6 |
| separated | 53 | 3.3 | 96.9 |
| divarced | 42 | 2.6 | 99.5 |
| defacto | 3 | 0.2 | 99.7 |
| missing data | 6 | 0.4 | 100.0 |

Mean age $=52.6$; range $15-100 ;$ s.d. 20.7

## EXPERTMENI I TABLE 2

 TYPE OF WARD FOR 1613 PROBLEM AND NON-PROBLEM DRINKERS USED FOR SETECTING ITENS| Ward | N | Percent | Cumulative <br> percent |
| :--- | ---: | :---: | :---: |
| Orthopaedic | 274 | 17.0 | 17.0 |
| General Surgery | 380 | 22.3 | 39.3 |
| Genito-Urinary | 359 | 22.3 | 61.6 |
| Gastroenterology | 100 | 6.2 | 67.8 |
| Rheumatology | 63 | 3.9 | 71.7 |
| Neurology | 77 | 4.8 | 76.5 |
| Haematology- | 61 | 3.8 | 80.3 |
| Immunology | 115 | 7.1 | 87.3 |
| Radiology | 106 | 6.6 | 93.9 |
| Ophthalmology | 96 | 6.0 | 99.9 |
| Ear Nose \& Throat | 2 | 0.1 | 100.0 |
| Missing data |  |  |  |

## EXPERIMENT I TABLE 3

Phases 2, 5, 6: Given Independent of SMAST Score: Assumption - 'N' to Drink $\Rightarrow$ PDST, SMAST = 0; $\quad$ /F Criteria - Males <3, Females <2 per half day.


# EXPERIMENT I TABLE 4 

PEARSON'S INTER-CORRELATIONS FOR SELECTED SELF-REPORT ITEMS
FOR 537 PROBLEM AND NON-PROBLEM DRINKERS

| Question | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | 100 | 15 | 05 | 25 | 38 | 09 | 26 | 38 | 23 | 25 | 16 | 26 | 08 | 29 | 35 | 28 | 47 | 27 | 39 | 42 | 11 | 33 | 23 |
| 3 |  | 100 | 10 | 09 | 12 | 21 | 00 | 14 | 14 | 01 | 03 | 03 | 05 | 12 | 17 | 13 | 14 | 20 | 14 | 13 | 16 | 11 | 19 |
| 4 |  |  | 100 | -05 | 16 | 06 | 08 | 04 | 17 | 03 | -01 | 08 | 05 | 07 | 07 | -01 | 04 | 06 | 10 | 10 | 08 | 04 | 11 |
| 5 |  |  |  | 100 | 14 | 17 | 30 | 32 | 19 | 14 | 29 | 21 | 16 | 18 | 16 | 09 | 19 | 40 | 25 | 28 | 29 | 25 | 19 |
| 6 |  |  |  |  | 100 | 24 | 38 | 37 | 33 | 28 | 24 | 35 | 22 | 45 | 49 | 42 | 47 | 36 | 38 | 51 | 29 | 38 | 50 |
| 7 |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 18 | 14 | 31 | 19 | 40 | 26 | 30 | 56 | 32 | 38 | 39 | 36 | 23 | 26 | 40 | 20 | 28 |
| 8 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 44 | 30 | 45 | 38 | 30 | 25 | 30 | 36 | 15 | 34 | 34 | 40 | 29 | 22 | 48 | 25 |
| 9 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 35 | 37 | 31 | 24 | 13 | 38 | 34 | 23 | 39 | 33 | 36 | 32 | 24 | 31 | 25 |
| 10 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 31 | 24 | 38 | 20 | 38 | 40 | 31 | 31 | 40 | 40 | 46 | 38 | 35 | 25 |
| 11 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 49 | 40 | 27 | 44 | 32 | 27 | 22 | 21 | 38 | 14 | 15 | 28 | 21 |
| 12 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 43 | 50 | 37 | 25 | 24 | 31 | 39 | 25 | 20 | 21 | 21 | 22 |
| 13 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 50 | 47 | 43 | 30 | 38 | 39 | 32 | 28 | 32 | 21 | 30 |
| 14 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 25 | 29 | 12 | 28 | 33 | 13 | 24 | 37 | 18 | 34 |
| 15 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 48 | 42 | 47 | 33 | 34 | 33 | 29 | 42 | 24 |
| 16 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 34 | 51 | 47 | 35 | 46 | 43 | 40 | 36 |
| 17 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 50 | 33 | 27 | 36 | 24 | 41 | 29 |
| 18 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 46 | 40 | 60 | 31 | 47 | 34 |
| 19 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 41 | 60 | 49 | 46 | 41 |
| 20 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 42 | 45 | 39 | 45 |
| 21 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 51 | 53 | 51 |
| 22 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 34 | 54 |
| 23 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 35 |
| 24 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 |

EXPERIMENT I TABLE 5 PEARSON'S CORRETATIONS FOR SELECTED PHYSICIANS ITEMS FOR 570 PROBLEM AND NON-PROBLFM DRINKERS

| Item | AST | GGT | Palpable liver | Duputyrens <br> Contractures |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| AST | 100 | 27 | 14 | 04 |
| GGT | 100 | 16 | 04 |  |
| Palpable liver |  | 100 | 22 |  |
| Duputyrens <br> Contractures |  | 100 |  |  |

Duputyrens
100

AST = Aspartate transaminase
GGT = Gamma-glutamyl-transpeptidase

```
    EXPERIMENT I TABLE 6
ITEM WEIGHTINGS FOR PDST SELF-REPORT QUESTIONS: SCALED WEIGHTS
```

| Question | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Weighting* | 3 | 1 | 1 | -2 | 6 | -6 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 | -1 | 3 | -4 | -2 | 2 | -1 | 3 | -2 | 8 | 4 | 2 |

Scaling factors: (see EXPERIMENT I TABLE 8 :, B values)

| $B$ interval | 0.01-0.05 | 0.06-0.10 | 0.11-0.15 | 0.16-0.20 | 0.21-0.25 | 0.26-0.30 | 0.31-0.35 | 0.36 | - 0.40 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Weighting | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |  | 8 |

## EXPERIMENT I TABLE 7

ITEM WEIGHTINGS FOR PDST PHYSICIANS ITEMS: SCALED WEIGHTS

| Item | GGT | AST | Duputyrens <br> Contractures | Palpable <br> Liver |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Weighting* | 1 | 2 | 2 | 1 |

* Scaling factors (See EXPERIMENT I TABLE 9 : B values)

| B interval <br> Weighting | $0.01-0.09$ | $0.10-0.17$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |

## ZERO-ORDER CORRELATION MATRIX FOR PDST QUESTIONS

## ( $\mathrm{N}=111$ )

| Question | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | 100 | -04 | 12 | 08 | -06 | -17 | 03 | 21 | -05 | 12 | -04 | 08 | -02 | 15 | 07 | 15 | 21 | 09 | 06 | 17 | -18 | -07 | -17 |
| 3 |  | 100 | 05 | 07 | -08 | 07 | -12 | 05 | 02 | -10 | 04 | 05 | 03 | 04 | 08 | 06 | 11 | 13 | 02 | 05 | 13 | -06 | 07 |
| 4 |  |  | 100 | -15 | 12 | 12 | -02 | -17 | 23 | 12 | -08 | -01 | -06 | 03 | 08 | -06 | -07 | 10 | 06 | 16 | 05 | 04 | 14 |
| 5 |  |  |  | 100 | -03 | 01 | 13 | 25 | 05 | 11 | 13 | 27 | 20 | 01 | 05 | -05 | 11 | 35 | 16 | 14 | 17 | 13 | 11 |
| 6 |  |  |  |  | 100 | 05 | 18 | -21 | 13 | 16 | 04 | 12 | 02 | 02 | 23 | $25^{\circ}$ | 08 | 18 | 20 | 19 | 04 | -01 | 25 |
| 7 |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 04 | -15 | 23 | 13 | 14 | 07 | 12 | 03 | 21 | 18 | 09 | 19 | 11 | 09 | 33 | 16 | 15 |
| 8 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 11 | 13 | 16 | 18 | 09 | -01 | 06 | 16 | -04 | 03 | 14 | 17 | 06 | 04 | 02 | 03 |
| 9 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | -02 | 16 | 13 | 10 | -08 | 02 | 00 | -03 | 04 | -01 | -02 | -04 | -10 | -18 | -09 |
| 10 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 08 | 15 | 17 | 10 | 13 | 24 | 07 | 00 | 20 | 13 | 22 | 25 | 12 | -03 |
| 11. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 31 | 21 | 08 | 21 | 16 | 15 | 16 | 16 | 18 | -04 | 05 | 14 | 09 |
| 12 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 35 | 30 | 13 | 06 | 13 | 13 | 12 | 05 | 08 | 00 | -08 | 00 |
| 13 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 24 | 20 | 19 | 20 | 16 | 25 | 17 | 15 | 07 | -01 | 12 |
| 14 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | . |  |  |  |  | 100 | 05 | 14. | -01 | 16 | 20 | -01 | 13 | 33 | 03 | 15 |
| 15 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 16 | 25 | 23 | 19 | 09 | 11 | 04 | 06 | -05 |
| 16 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | - |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 21 | 24 | 40 | 11 | 26 | 40 | 23 | 14 |
| 17 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 33 | 27 | 15 | 15 | 09 | 11 | 09 |
| 18 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 31 | 16 | 31 | 18 | -04 | . 15 |
| 19 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 25 | 42 | 38 | 34 | 22 |
| 20 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 18 | 15 | 04 | 22 |
| 21 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 37 | 16 | 20 |
| 22 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 16 | 27 |
| 23 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 100 | 11 |
| 24 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | : |  |  | 100 |

## APPENDIX E

THE PROBLEM DRINKING SCREENING TEST (PDST): A MEASURE FOR THE CONSTRUCT OF PROBLEM DRINKING
A. PDST Self-Report Items

1. When did you last drink?
(Discontinue if response is 'never')
2. How much do you normally drink each week?
(Discontinue if men score less than five 'drinks' and women
less than 3. Score 1 point for men drinking 36 or more 'drinks', women 16 or more)

For questions 3 to 28, all positive responses score 1 point.
3. Have you been in hospital more than once because of accidents? (By accidents, we mean all types)
4. Have any close family members such as a parent, spouse, brother, or sister, had drinking problems?

Thinking over the last three months -
5. Do you drink before lunch fairly often?
6. After the first glass or two of alcohol do you ever feel a craving for more?
7. Do you find you are thinking a lot about alcohol?
8. Do you sometimes drink alcohol even against your doctor's advice?
9. When you drink a lot of alcohol do you tend to eat less?
10. In the morning do you sometimes feel that you might be sick (vomit)?
11. Have you found that your hands have been trembling a lot?
12. Have you ever used alcohol to get rid of trembling or the feeling that you might be sick?
13. Have you ever been criticized at work because of your drinking?
14. Do you prefer to drink alone?
15. Do you think you're in worse shape because of your drinking?
16. Do you ever have a guilty conscience about drinking?
17. In order to cut down your drinking, have you ever felt it necessary to limit it to certain occasions or to certain times of the day?
18. Do you feel you should drink less?
19. Do you think that without alcohol you would have fewer problems?
20. When you're upset do you drink alcohol to calm down?
21. Are there times when you'd like to stop drinking?
22. Would you get along better with your spouse/partner/the people you're closest to if you didn't drink?
23. Have you ever deliberately tried to do without any alcohol at all?
24. Have you of ten been told that your breath smells of alcohol?
B. PDST Physician's Assessment
25. Palpable liver
26. Dupuytrens Contractures
27. Elevated Serum-gamma-glutamyl-transpeptidase
28. Elevated aspartate transaminase.

## Conversion of Reported Quantities to 'Drinks'

| Beer | No. | Spirits/Liqueurs | No. | Fortified Wine | No. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Glass/can | 1 | Nip | 1 | glass | 1 |
| Large can | 2 | bottle (sm) | 16 | bottle | 14 |
| Handle | 2 | bottle (large) | 30 |  |  |
| Bottle | 4 | Table wine |  | Cocktails |  |
| Jugs | 6 | glass | 1 | glass | 2 |
| Flagon | 8 | bottle | 8 |  |  |

## QUESTIONS, SPSS SOURCE PROGRAMME AND RAW DATA FOR EXPERTMENT II

$\operatorname{lota}_{1-6}^{\square} \square \square \square$
$\operatorname{Sex}_{(M / F) 7} \square$
Ago $\square$
$\square$ yes No
$\underset{\text { Code }}{\text { f. } 0} \square$

Q 1. Have you been admitced to hospital moxe than once because of accidents? (By accidents, we nean all types)
Q 2. Have any clese family members such as a parent, brother, spouse, ox sistex, had dxinking problems?


| Beer | No. | $\frac{\text { Spirits/ }}{\text { Liqueurs }}$ | No. | Sherry | NO. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| glass/can |  | nip....... |  | glass ... |  |
| laxge can |  | bottle (sm) |  | bottle.. |  |
| hande.. |  | bottle (lge) |  | Cocktails |  |
| buttle.. |  | Wine |  | glass ... |  |
|  |  | glass. |  |  |  |
| gs .... |  | bottla |  |  |  |
| Elagon.. |  |  |  |  |  |

## Questions

## YES NO



$\square$37
2. Have you ever awakened the morning after some drinking the night before and found that you could not remember a part of the evening?

$\square$

$\square$
3. Does your spouse (or parents) ever worry or complain about your dr inking?


4 . Can you stop orinking without a struggle after one or two drinks?

5. Do you ever feel bad about your drinking? $\qquad$6. Do friends or relatives think you are a normaldsinker?$\square 42$
7. Do you ever try to limit your drinking to certain timesof the day or to certain places?
43
8. Are you always able to stop drinking when you want to? ..... 9. Have you ever attended a meeting of AlcoholicsAnonymous (AA)?

44
10. Have you evor been in fights when drinking?

$\qquad$
11. Has drinking ever created problems with you and
$\square$

your spouse?
$\square 46$
12. Has your spouse (or other family member) ever gone to anyone for help atout your drinking?


13.. Have you ever lost friends of girlfriends/boyfriends because of drinking?

14. Have you ever been in trouble at work because of drinking?

15. Have you ever lost a job because of drinking? $\}$
$\square$
50
16. Have you ever neglected your obligations, your family, or your work for two or more days in a rou because you were drinking?

 ..... 5251
17. Do you ever drink before noon?$\square$

18. Have you ever been told you have liver trouble? Cirrhosis?
$\square$

19. Have you ever had delirium tremens (DTs), severe shaking,heard voices, or seen things that weren't there afterheavy dginking?
55
20. Have you ever gone to anyone for help about your drinking?$\square$
56
21. Have you ever been in a hospital because of drinking?
$\square$
57
22. Have you ever been a patient in a psychiatric hospital or on a psychiatric ward of a general hospital where drinking was part of the problem?

$\square$

$\square$ ..... 58
23. Have you ever been seen at a psychiatric or mental health clinic, or gone to a doctor, social worker, or clergyman for help with an emotional problem in which drinking had a* played a part?

$\square$ ..... 5924. Have you ever been arrested, even for a few hours,because of drunk behaviour?
$\square$
$\square$60
25. Have you ever been arrested for drunk driving after drinking? ..... $\square$

$\square$ ..... 61

| RUN RAME PRINT AAC | OMA, CO |
| :---: | :---: |
| variarle list |  |
| input medium | T0 m2s |
| wher medium | \|omit. ${ }^{\text {d }}$ |
| Impuf format |  |
| var lasels | Q1 ADM, To HoSe, before because of an acc. 1 |
|  | 02 family member hith drinking problem/ |
|  | 03 drink befohe tunch/ |
|  | Of CRAVE FOR MORE |
|  | os think about micomol alot/ |
|  | of drimk acainst doctor's adyicz/ 07 eat less/ |
|  | QB SICK in mornimg/ |
|  | Qs taembling hands/ |
|  | Qia USE ALCOHOL TO REDUCE TREmeling/ |
|  | Oll chiticised at work/ |
|  | 012 mereme to drink mone/ |
|  | Q13 In worse simpe aechuse |
|  | Q14 Guilty conscience/ |
|  | Qis mpint dessf |
|  | O17 EEWER PROALEMS |
|  | OLB DRINK TO CALM DOhm/ |
|  |  |
|  | Q20 get along better with people, |
|  | Q21 deltberately tried to do without/ |
| " | Q22 breath smelis/ |
|  | 023 DRIMK SCORE/ |
|  | Bo OUAMTITY Of beer/ |
|  | bc container beer mrunk prom/ |
|  | SQ Codantity of spirits/ |
|  | Wo QUANTITY OF HINE/ |
|  | wC Container hine drimk from/ |
|  | SHG quantity of sherry/ |
|  | She container sherry drunk from/ |
|  | co quantipy of cocktails/ |
|  | ml mormal drinkery |
|  | M2 Elackout/ |
|  | ma spouse complaining/ |
|  | M4 STOP drinking after 1 or 2 drinks/ |
|  | ms feel bad about drinking/ |
|  | MG FRIENDS THINK yOU A NORALI DRINKER/ |
|  | Mg Stor drinking when you want tof |
|  | m3 A. A.meeting/ |
|  | mio fight when drinking $f$ |
|  | M11 DRTNKENG CREATED PRCB, WITtl SPCUSE/ |
|  | M12 SPOUSE COME FOR HELP/ |
|  | m14 mrourle AT HORK/ |
|  | M15 Losit a jos/ |
|  | M16 neclecteo obligations family work/ |
|  | M17 DRINK EEFORE NOOA/ <br> Mid LTVER "RousLef |
|  | mig delirtum tremens/ |
|  | m20 gone for help/ |
|  | M21 HOSEITAL/ |
|  | M22 PATIENT IN PSYCHIATRIC Mard/ |
|  | M23 EmOTIONAL PROBLEMS/ |
|  | 1225 Drenk dituing |
|  | sex llymale f21 femare/ |

(11male f21 femaief

CODE 'il queen wary nóspital (2) mahu

```
CODE To 
OL TO O22 (0)NO (L)YES',
```



```
16) FLAOM (7NIP (0)SMALE BOTTE '9)LMRGE BOTTLE/
M2;M3,M5;M7,MS TO M25 (0)NO (1)YES/
DAFE TO M2S(ALANK=999g)
O1 TO 023,41 TO K25 (9999m0)(9m01
casT=0
O=01 TO O23
```



```
SMASTMM1+MS+MS MG+MS M9 *MIL+M24+M16+M20+M21+M24+M25
MF*-69+M20*M21
MAST*HO+(2*MT ) + (5*MP
```

RECOOR
RECODE
RECODE
Comprepe
COMP Repeat
соmpute
COMPuTE
COMPUTE
COMP
сомрите
сонрите

310533152101111011111111011111111020204590048000000001111121000101110100110000 300583119110100110010110010001111210501590000000000000111120101111100111111000 300583119111101111110010111011111053504070204000000001110100002001001101000000 300583124110101111111010111011101212315070204000000001110111101001111101110010 300593208111000000100000010100001000000000000010400000000001100000000010000000 2005 B 3121150111101110101000111011140603090084098401410111000111001001101000000 090483117110111101111011111111111040505680000007400001111100000101111110110011 080483132101011111111111111111111024606090044000000001111111001101101101111100 080483122100111111111011111111111087500800000000000001111111011111101111100111 080463121111101010001011111101101100400000064000000001110111011111111100110110 080483136101011110000011111111101000002290124000000611011111110110000010111100 08048313611021111111111110111111024200000396001100001111110101111111101011111 060483118101111100110110101111111144400000000000000001111010111111101111111111 1504831351010110000000111111111101090502570000000000001001101111111000000100100 150483271111011111110111111111111000012090084000000001111111111111001001111111 150483125110111110111111011111011084600000000000000001111110111101111101100011 150483125101011011100010011111101096305070000000000001110010101101101101110011 150483128111010111000110011111111036500000000000000001010110010101000000111100 150483157100111000010011011111011044500000000000000001111111100110000110100000 150483155100110010001011111011011050100480084000000001111110101111100100000000 150483118111111111111111011111111000010590000070400001111110111111111101111111 150483134110111111011011111111111048400000000000000001111101111101101110110001 150483248111010011110011111111101025400480084007400211111101111101011101101100 150403138110111111011111101111111080600000000000000001111111111111110101111111 150483141110011101111111011111111096403090000000000001111111111111101111111100 220483250101011010010111111111101000000880000014400001111111110000000010111100 220483253101111110010111111111111000002590000021400001111111110111110101101100 220403130101111111111011011101111026404480084014400001111110100111011110100000 220483225101011111111011111111111000000000000017400001111111111101111001101110 220493233101111111011111111111111000004590244000000001111101111110100111110100 220481121111011001101011011111111096400790000000000001011110111101101000100111 220483263101010111000011111111111001101470000000000001010111100100000110100001 220483152100011101111011111111111012401970000000000001001111110100100110100101 220483147100010100000011111011101050501070000000000001111101010001000000110001 220483236100011011100001111111110001300000000000000001111101111101101000100101 200583123110111111111111101111111084409090000000000001111100111101111101100011 20058312411111111111101101111101107250088000000000000111111011110111111110011 20058313511101110111111111111110115050159000000000000111111021111101001111111 210583124101000101101111011111110015500000000000000001110111101101110001000011 210583135100000000000000000000000000000370031000000000000000000100000100001100 20058313211111111111100110111111111118500570000007400001111110111101001101111110 190533137110001110011101111111011144400000000000000001011111011111101101111111 210533230111011011100111011111111060500170000000000001000000100010110111111110 21058315811101010101001111111111028400870000000000001111101111101000111100011 200583139110111111111111111111111000009090000028400001111110111111111111110011 200583222101011111001001011111011032502490234000000111111111110100101101100001 200583119110000010000011011111001012500880000000000000110111011011110100100011 200583124100111111111011000111111096504590084003400001111110111101101101110011 200593119101111111110011011111011040610590084000000001111110101101111101110011 210563230111001000000000001000000000000000000000000001000010011111000000004100 210583128110010010111111011111111002400000164014400001110110010111111101111111 $20058313310001101011011000111100108 \$ 401070000000000000011000111101000000111100$ 290783121121212122222122222222221024400000000000000002122222211222222222112221 2907432121211112222111111111111006400880000000000001112121112112221222122222 29076321222221112212112211111110000015900000426000011121111121111112211122 290783228112211122221111111111121004100000324000000001111111111111111121111122 29078314912221211221121111111111

11111211211211 2907 a37401211112111121111111111111000003090164000000001111121112112222122111122 29078323312122222111211121111112200000000000000000000222222212111222221212122 29078322121111111111211211111121004603090000000000001111111111121111121111112 290783124111111111111211111111111156404590000000000001111112111111111122111112 29078311911121111111221111121111108230088000000000000111111211111121221112111 2907831501221111112211111111111100510207040400000000211111111212111122111121 290783140122212211111211111111111045501590011000000001221121111211121111111221 010793140200011011011011111111011114500170000000000001111110002111000001100010 $010763147200011 \pm 10010111111111101032600000000084500001101111010110000100100001$ 010783136200110111111111111111110009300170000000000000111101010111100100110000 010783122210000110001000011010101044400170000000000001100000101000100100000011 010743126211011011101011011111111073400000000000000001111110101101111100100011 010783137210011100111011111111011152400000000012100001111111111110101100110001 010783134201111111111011011111111075100000000000000001111110111111111111110010 21068324721111111110011111111101023500000000000000001100111110000000111001100 210633245200110111110111111111101006507070000000000001111111100100101100101100 210633224210101000010001000110101008400880000000000000001001000000000100000000 210681126211110111010111011111111200612090264000001811111110111111111101110111 210683149211111111111110011111012224600000000000000001111110111101111101010111 21068313621011010111011010111111

100101010010100100001111 210603135211111010111100001100101154501570000000000001111000101101111101010001 210601247301111111110011011111111000005680000000000001111100110100001111111100 210631147200111010000111111110001088400000000000000001100111000000000100000101 2106831352110101101101111101111104040000000000000000110010110100101110010010 210683136210111111001011011111011168501680000000000001111110101111101100111000 010783146211111111111111011111111

04590000000000000111110 61111111102010011

## PATIENT ALCOHOL RELATED ILLNESS SURVEY

Name: $\qquad$

"My name is .... and I am from the Department of greventive and Community Medicine. I am doing a survey financed by the Alcoholic Liquor Advisory Council, and I'm Interviewing patients to provide information on the drinking patterns of people admitted to this hospltal. The questions I'd like to ask you should only take about 20 minutes."

Q 1. Do you mind participating in the survey? [l=Yes, 2 NNO
Q 2. Have you taken part in this survey before [ $1=\mathrm{Y} e \mathrm{~s}, 2=$ No, $3=$ Not sure] WHICH YOU 'VE BEEN A HEAVY DRINKER?' EXPAND IF NECESSARY. IF YES, GO TO Q.42.

Q 4. On an average drinking occasion, can you tell me the number and type of each drink you would have?
[Examples of measures, 1 large glass of beer, 3 jugs of beer, 2 nips of spirits, half a bottle of wine etc.?

Number and type of measure

1. Beer
2. Spixits
3. Eortified Wine
(Shexry, Poxt, Vermouth)
4. Table wine
5. Other beverages $\square$
TOTAL
Q 5. How long is/was it on the average between drinking occasions?

| [1] Less than 12 hours | Days |
| :--- | ---: |
| [2] One day | $\frac{1}{2}$ |
| [3] Two to Eour days | 3 |
| [4] Five to thirceer, days | 20 |
| [5] Two to three weeks | 30 |
| $[6]$ Over three weeks but less than six months | 200 |
| [7] Six months or more | - |

[2] One day
2
(3] Two to Eour days
20
[5] two to three weeks 30
[6] Ovex three weeks but less than six months 200
(7) Six months os more

[QUESTIONS 21-41, YES=1, NO=2]

Q 21. Have you found that your hands have been trembling a lot recently?
Q22. Do you sometimes have feelings of nausea in the morning?
Q 23. Have you ever tried to get rid of trembling and nausea with alcohol?
2 24. At the monent do you feel miserable because of any problems or difficulties related to your drinking?

Q 25. Do you dxink before lunch fairly often?
Q 26. After the first glass or two of alcohol do you ever feel a craving for more?

Q 27. Axe you preoccupied with thoughts about alcohol?
Q 28. Do you sometimes drink alcohol even against your doctor's advice?
Q 29. When you dxink a lot of alcohol, do you tend to eat less?
Q 30. Have you ever been criticized at work because of your drinking?
$Q$ 31. Do you prefer to drink alone?
Q 32. Do you think you've been in worse shape since you started drinking?
Q 33. Do you ever have a guilty conscience about drinking?
50 [ ]
51 [ ]
52 (1)

53 [ ]
54 []

55 [ 1
56 [ ]
57 - :
58 !
59
60 [
61 1

Q 34. Have you ever felt it necessary to limit your dxinking to cextain occasions or to cextain times of the day?

2 35. Do you Eeel you should drink less?
Q 36. Do you think that without alcohol you would have fewer problems?
Q 37. When you're upset do you drink alcohol to calm down?
Q.38. Are thexe times when you'd like to stop drinking?

8 39. Would you get along better with your spouse/partnex/the people you're closest to if you dian't drink?

Q 40. Have you ever deliberately tried to do without any alcohol at all?
Q 41. Have you often been told that your breath smells of alcohol?

Q 42. Einally, I'd like to ask a few questions about yourself. Firstly, can you tell me how long you've been in hospital?
Q 43. In which year were you born?
O 44. Lastly, what is your present mazital status?
[1] married
[2] separated
[3] divorced
[4] de facto
16 !
[5] single
[6] widowed
Sex ( $M=1, E=2$ )
Waxd
Date (day/monch)

17 !


1. File present
2. Number of previous admissions (Ch.Ch. and other hospitals) [0,1,2,3, 5=greater than 3]
Surgical bed
Medical bed
Psychiatric bed

Maternity bed
3. $1=$ Yes, $2=$ Not clear

> T.B.

Peptic or bleeding ulcer
Pancreatitis
High blood pressure
Hepatitis
Jaundice
Liver disease (cirrhosis)

## Eneumonia

Chronic bronchitis
Epilepsy
Memory disorders
Nutrition
Accidents (all types, more than one)
Other drug abuse
Peripheral Neuritis
Suicide attempt
45 1
46 [
ALCOHOLISM DIAGNOSED?

Palpable liver
48 !
Jaundice


Spider angiomata
Dupuyerens contractures
other


Clinical exam checked? (Chxistchurch Hospital Only)
Patient Identification


1. SMAC


DATE TIME MCV
2. MCV

25-35


SUMMARY
Form 1. Complete
2. Missing MCV
3. Missing SMAC
4. Missing clinical exam.
5. Patient refused
6. Patient incapable

41 [ ]
7. Patient died
8. Incomplete for other reason


| 1 |  | (3)com:a <br> (4) Delta <br> (5) Epsiion <br> (9) Miselng Data <br> (9999) BLank/ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | \%num | (9999) -1ank/ |
|  | ShOT | (9999) Blank/ |
|  | SMTM | (9999) Blank/ |
|  | phos | (1) $\leq 30$ |
|  |  | (2) $30-120$ |
|  |  | (3) $\times 120$ |
|  |  | (9999) 8iank/ |
|  | 6c\% | - (1) 0-3s |
|  |  | (2) $36-50$ |
|  |  | (3) $51-992$ |
|  |  | (9999) Bionk/ |
|  | As\% | (1) $<50$ |
|  |  | (2) $>50$ |
|  |  | (9999) Blant/ |
|  | H0\% | (9999) Elank/ |
|  | MTH | (9999) Blank/ |
|  | NCV | (1) < 80 |
|  |  | (2) $80-100$ |
|  |  | (3) 3100 |
|  |  | (9999) 5lank/ |
|  | $\text { Bi } 7$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { o } \$ 0 \text { (1) Yea } \\ & \text { (999) } 19 \text { ank/ } \end{aligned}$ |
| Recode | 08 \% | O 020(aLank.9m0) |
| COMP UTE | HAST | -0 |
| D) nepeat | H"O8 | T0 020 |
| COnP UTE | uAST | whast*h |
| END hepeat |  |  |
| fecone | 021 | T0 041 (9999m0) |
| COMPUTE | WALT |  |
| Do repeam | HA 0 | 21 T0 041 |
| COnf UTE | HALT | mattima |
| Eno nereat |  |  |











Mard
Sex $\qquad$ SELF-ADALNISTERED GUESTMONNAIRE OH ALCDHOL
Name $\qquad$
Innspital No. $\qquad$ ves $\frac{\text { V1CK }}{\text { NO }}$


Q23. On the average, write in the number you would normally drink in a week:

| Beer | No. | $\frac{\text { Spirits/ }}{\text { Liqueurs }}$ | No. | Sherry | No. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| glass/can |  | nip |  | glass. |  |
| Large can |  | bottle (sm) |  | bottle. |  |
| handle |  | bottle (lge) |  | Cocktails |  |
|  |  | Wine |  | glass.. |  |
|  |  | 9195s |  |  |  |
| jugs. |  | bottle |  |  |  |

RUN NAME
PRINT BACK
VARIABIE ITST TNPUT MISS ING VALUES VALUE LABELS

COMPUTE
COMPUTE

CONTROL
AGE,SEX,Q1 TO Q23,DRINK1,C1 TO C23,DRINK2
[TEST. D]
FIXED(F2.0.24F1.0,F3.0.23F1.0,F3.0)
AGE (99)/SEX,Q1 TO Q23,C1 TO C23(9)/DRINKI,DRINK2(999)/
SEX (1) MALE (2) FEMALE/
Q1 TO Q23, Cl TO C23 (0)NO (I)YES/
$\operatorname{TOT}=Q 1+Q 2+Q 3+Q 4+Q 5+Q 6+Q 7+Q 8+Q 9+Q 10+Q 11+Q 12+Q 13+Q 14+Q 15+Q 16+Q 17$
$+Q 18+Q 19+Q 20+Q 21+Q 22+Q 23$
$\mathrm{TOT} 2=\mathrm{C} 1+\mathrm{C} 2+\mathrm{C} 3+\mathrm{C} 4+\mathrm{C} 5+\mathrm{C} 6+\mathrm{C} 7+\mathrm{C} 8+\mathrm{C} 9+\mathrm{C} 10+\mathrm{C} 11+\mathrm{C} 12+\mathrm{C} 13+\mathrm{C} 14+\mathrm{C} 15+\mathrm{C} 16+\mathrm{C} 17$
$+\mathrm{C} 18+\mathrm{C} 19+\mathrm{C} 20+\mathrm{C} 21+\mathrm{C} 22+\mathrm{C} 23$

2511011111111011111111110123810111111111111111111101270 6710011101011011111111011109900111010110010111110111099 4010011011111110100111101109910111110111100000101111099 2210000100000101001100010105600001000001010011000101056 5320101010011001111111111109011010100100011111111111090 3820110011101001111111010109000100111010011110111101082 5310001101111001011111111106000001011101011111111111120 3511111111111101101111111129711111101111011111111111340 3011011100111101011011111117400111111111110111101111198 2311101111110101101111011121001011111110011011101111228 3311101001111001000111111130011010011011011011111111099 2411001111111101011100101109910011110111001011111011099 2611010011110001011011111122010110111100010111111111235 3310010001111001101111110115201100011110111010111101068 5011011111011001011111100130810111110110011011111011306 4910001001101000011011111121810010011010000110110100030 6111000100011001111111111001500001100010011111111110030 5210011101111011111111111121000111111110011111111101210 4410101011101101111111111108001010111011011111111111048 2911111110111001101011111127011111101111011111111111270 2411101111100101111111111108011011111010011011111111048 6210011111111111111111110110000111111111111111111111086 2210001111101001001111101133600011111010010110111111256 6410011111111111101111101119500111111111111111111011280 7320011011100011111101110109900010011100111111111001099 6921111001111000111011110001101010111010001111111101038 3111011111111101101111111143211111111111111011111011432 2120111111111001101111111121211111111111111011111111302 2020101110100001111111110105201001101000010111111101054 4410101011100001000101111002401010101000011011011011072 3820111011011000000010000001000000010110010001101010010 5211011111111111101011111118010111111111111111111111180 2111101111111101101111111109211011111111011011111111180 4311011111111111111111111122210111111111111111111111152 3911011111111101111111111170210111111111111111111111674 5011011111000101000111111119210110110001111000111111240 2711011101101110100101111109610111011110111011111101138 2511111111111101111111111126011111101111011111111111269 2711111100001001000111010116311100001110111001101101460 1810101111011001101111101137601011110111011011111011280 2511000011010000111111111105200000010000011011111111036 3210111111111111111111111117801111111111111111111111070 4310011111111001111111010199900111111110011111110109999 2220101111010011000011010104001011110110110010111101070 3510001001000000011111111106600000010000100111011001251 4811011111111011111111110121810111111110111011111111230 1620001111111001111111110107000011111110011111110001070 1811101010000111000100100104011010110001100000000011048 3211000000011000001100011107210001000000000011101111072 2411111111010111011111100113011111110111111011111001130 3610101011111001111111110105401010011110011111111111096 4210011111111111111111111124000111111111111111111111999 2421111111111111111111111132411111111111111111111011138 4720111001111011101111111109001111011110111011111101090 3011101111011111111111110199911011110110111111111111999 4010101111101111111111111118601111111011111011111111186 2811101111000111111111111120011011111001111111111111201 3710001101101011111111111105600010010010011111111111056 6320111101000001111011110117901111010000110010111101220 4520011111011011111111101112600111110110111011111001126 3811111111000101011111111115011111110110110111111111150 3611001101100011111011111110610011011000111110111111063 1911101100000001011111110002011010010001010101101110016 2721011111101001001010001108010111110000010010100001080 2010001101011101101101100115000011010101011011111101150 6310101111010011111111111139001010111100111111111011422 3810001010101001100011100106011000000011011011111101048

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

Abbott, M. H. Stait-Trait Learned Helplessness. Unpublished masters thesis, University of Canterbury, 1977.

Abbott, M. W. Inter-relations between cognitive factors in the prediction of outcome among chronic alcoholics.
Unpublished doctoral thesis, University of Canterbury, 1979.
Adorno, T. W., Erankel-Brunswik, E, Levinson, D.J., Sanford, R.N. The Authoritarian Personality. New York; Harper \& Row, 1950.

Allport, G. W. Personality: A Psychological Interpretation. New York: Holt, 1937.

American Psychiatric Association. Committee on Nomenclature and Statistics, Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders. Third Edition, Hashington, D. C., 1968.

American Psychiatric Association. Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders. DSM-III. Washington D. C., American Psychiatric Association, 1980.

American Psychological Association. Standards for Educational and Psychological Tests and Manuals. American Psychological Association, Washington D. C., 1974.

Anastasi, A. Psychological Testing. First Edition, MacMillan Co., London, 1976.

Anderson, N. H. primacy efrects in personality impression Formation using a generalised order effect paradigm. Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 1965 , 2. pp1-9.

Apfeldorf, M. Are personality test differences between alcoholics and others due to source of sample: A review of MMPI rindings. International Journal of the Addictions, 1981, 16. pp449-504.

Apfeldore, M. Contrasting assumptions and directions in MMPI research on alcoholism. Quarterly Journal for studies on Alcohol, 1974, 35, pp1375-1379.

Apreldorf, M. \% Hunley, P. J. Application of MMPI alcoholism scales to older alcoholics and problem drinkers. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1973, 36, pp645-653.

Armor, D.J., Polich, J.M. \& Stambul, H. B. Alcoholism and Treatment, New York, Wiley, 1978.

Atsaides, J. P., Neuringer, C. \& Davis, K. L. Development of an institutionalized chronic alcoholic scale. Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 1977, 45, pp609-611.

Bacon, S.D. Concepts. In Filestead, W. J., Rossi, J.J., Keller, M. (Eds). Alcohol and alcohol problems: New thinking and new directions. Cambridge, Ballinger, Chapter 3, 1976.

Bacon, S.D. The problems of alcoholism in American society. In Malikin, D., Social Disability. New York, New York University Press, 1973, pp8-30.

Bagrel, A., D'Houtaud, A., Gueguen, R. Relations between reported alcohol consumption and certain biological variables in an unrelated population. Clinical Chemistry, 1979, 25, pp1242-1246.

Bailey, M. B. Some issues in epidemiologic surveys on
alcoholism. Paper presented at the annual meeting, American Publican Health Association, Epidemiological Section, San Fransisco, November, 1966.

Bailey, M.B., Haberman, P. W., B Sheinberg, J. Identifying $^{\text {B }}$ alcoholics in population surveys: A report on reliability. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1966, 27, pp300-315.

Bailey, M.B., Haberman, P. W., Alksne, H. The epidemiology of alcoholism in an urban residential area. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1966, 26, pp19-40.

Bandura, A. Self-efficacy: Toward a unified theory of behavioural change. Psychological Review, 1977, 84, pp191-215.

Bandura, A. Reflections on self-efficacy. In S. Rachman (Ed.), Perceived self-efficacy: Analyses of Bandura's theory of behavioural change. Advances in Behaviour Research and Therapy, 1978, 1, pp237-269.

Bandura, A. Gauging the relationship between self-efficacy, judgement and action. Cognitive Therapy and Research, 1980, 4, pp263-268.

Bandura, A. and Adams, N. E. Analysis of self-efficacy theory of behavioural change. Cognitive Therapy and Research, 1977, 1, pp287-310.

Bandura, A., Adams, N.E., Hardy, A.B. \& Howells, G. N. Tests of the generality of self-efficacy theory. Cognitive Therapy and Research, 1980, 4, pp39-66.

Bang, N. U., Iversen, K., Jagt, T. \& Madsen, S. Serum glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase activity in acute and chronic alcoholism. Journal of the American Medical Association, 1958, 168, pp156-158.

Barnes, G.E. The Alcoholic Personality: A reanalysis of the literature. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1979, 40, pp571-634.

Barry, H. Psychological factors in alcoholism. In B. Kissin and H. Begleiter (Eds). The biology of alcoholism, Vol. 3, Clinical pathology, 1974, New York, Plenum.

Barthol, R.P., Bridge, R.G. The echo multi-response method for surveying value and influence patterns in groups. Psychological Reports, 1968, 22, pp1345-1354.

Bavelas, J. B. Personality: Current theory and research. Brooks Cole, Monterey, California, 1978.

Bean, W. B. Vascular spiders and related lesions of the skin. Blackwell Sci. Publ., Oxford, England, 1959.

Becker, H.S. Outsiders. New York: Free Press, 1963.
Bem, D.J., \& Alien, A. On predicting some of the people some of the time: The search for cross-situational consistencies in behaviour. Psychological Review, 1974, 81, pp506-520.

Benjamin, E.S., Imrie, C, 月, \& Blumgart, L. M. Alcohol and the pancreas. In G.E. Edwards \& M. Grant (eds). Alcoholism: New knowledge and new responses, University park, Baltimore, Ma., 1977, pp328-334.

Benussi, G., Gallimberti, L., Zorzut, G., De Vanna, M. and Gasparini, V. Validation of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST) in an Italian urban population. Druq and Alcohol Dependence, 1982, 9, pp257-265.

Beresford, T., Low, D., Hall, R. C. W., Adduci, R. \& Goggans, F. A computerised biochemical profile for detection of alcoholism. psychosomatics, 1982, 23, pp713-720.

Bernadt, M. W., Mumford, J., Taylor, C., \& Smith, B. Comparison of questionnaire and laboratory tests in the detection of excessive drinking and alcoholism. Lancet, 1982, 1, pp325-328.

Bhathal, D.S., Wilkinson, P., Clifton, S., Rankin, J. G. \& Santamaria, J. N. The spectrum of liver diseases in alcoholism. Australian and New. Zealand Journal of Medicine, 1975, 5, pp49-57.

Bieri, J., Atkins, A.L., Briar, S., Leaman, R.L., Miller, H. \& Tripodi, T. Clinical and Social Judgement, New York: Wiley, 1966.

Bliding, G., Bliding, A., Fex, G. \& Tornquist, C. The appropriateness of laboratory tests in tracing young heavy drinkers. Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 1982, 10, pp153-158.

Blume, S.B. Is alcoholism treatment worthwhile? Bulletin of the New York academyn of medicine, 1983, 1959, pp171-180.

Brauerman, I.M. Skin signs of systematic disease. Saunders, Philadelphia, 1970, pp339-344.

Brohult, J., Carlson, L, A. \& Reichard, H. Serum enzyme activities, cholesterin and triglycerides in serum after

Brohult, 3., Carlson, L. A. \&eichard, H. Serum enzyme activities, cholesterin and triglycerides in serum after intake of alcohol. Scandinavian Journal of Clinical and Laboratory Investigation, Supplement (Os10), 1966, 92, pp82-89.

Brookover, $\mathrm{H}^{\prime}$, Erickson, E. \& Joiner, L. Self-concept of ability and school achievement, III. East Lansing: office of Research and Publication, Michigan State University, 1967.

Brudger, C. I. A multivariate approach to the classification of alcoholics in an inpatient clinical population. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1982, 43, pp843-850.

Brubank, $F$. A computer diagnostic system for the diagnosis of prolonged undifferentiating liver disease. American Journal of Medicine, 1969, 46, pp401-415.

Button, A. D. A study of alcoholics with the MMPI. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1956, 17, pp263-281.

Cahalan, D. Problem drinkers. San Fransisco; Jossey-Bass, 1970.

Cahalan, D., Cisin, I. H. \& Crosley. American Drinking Practices: A National Survey of Behavior and Attitudes. Monograph 6. New Brunswick, N. J.: Rutgers Center for Alcohol Studies. 1969.

Cahalan, D. \& Room, R. Problem drinking among American men aged 21-59. American Journal of Public Health, 1972, 62, pp1473-1482.

Cahalan, D. \& Room, R. Problem drinking among American men. New Brunswick, New Jersey: Rutgers Center of Alcohol Studies, 1973.

Carney, M. W. P. \& Sheffield, B.F. The hemogram and the diagnosis of alcoholism. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1980, 41. pp744-748.

Carter, F. M. Personality factors related to participation in treatment by hospitalised male alcoholics. Journal of Clinical Psychology, 1966, 22, pp114-116.

Cartwright, A.K.J., Shaw, S.J. \& Sprately, T.A. Designing a comprehensive community response to problems of alcohol abuse. Report by the Maudsley Alcoholism Pilot project to DHSS, 1975.

Chait, A., Mancini, M., February, A. W. \& Lewis, B. Clinical and metabolic study of alcoholic hyperlipidaemia. Lancet, 1972, ii, pp62-64.

Chalmers, D. M. \& Chanarin, I. Sex-related differences in the haemetological effects of excessive alcohol consumption. Journal of Clinical pathology, 1980, 33, pp3-7.

Chick, J. Alcohol dependence: Methodological issues in its measurement: Reliability of the criteria. British Journal of Addiction, 1981, 75, pp175-196.

Chick, J. Is there a unidimensional alcohol dependence syndrome? British Journal of Addiction, 1980, 75, pp265-280.

Chick, J. Durfy, J.C. Application to the alcohol dependence syndrome of a method for determining the sequential
development of symptoms. Psychological Medicine, 1979, 9, pp313-320.

Chick, J., Krietman, N. \& Plant, M. Mean cell volume and gamma-glutamyl-transpeptidase as markers of drinking in working men. Lancet, 1981, 2 , pp1249-1251.

Christie, N. \& Bruun, K. Alcohol problems: The conceptual「ramework. In M. Keller \& T. G. Coffey (Eds). Proceedings of the 28 th International Congress on Alcohol and Alcoholism. Highland Park, Hillhouse Press, 1969, pp67-73.

Cisin, I. M. Community studies of drinking behaviour. Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, 1963, 107, Art. 2, pp607-612.

Clark, P.M.S., \& Kricka, L.J. Biochemical tests for alcohol abuse. British Journal of Alcohol and Alcoholism. 1981, 16. pp11-27.

Clark, W. B. \& Cahalan, D. Changes in problem drinking over a Sour-year span. Addictive Behavior, 1976, 1, pp251-259.

Clark, W. B. \& Cahalan, D. Changes in problem drinking over a four year span. In E.M. Pattison, M. B. Sobell \& L. C. Sobell (Eds). Emerging concepts of alcohol dependence. Springer Publishing Company, New York, 1977.

Clopton, J.R. Alcoholism and the MMPI: A review. Journal or Studies on Alcohol, 1978, 39, pp1540-1558.

Collins, M.A., Nijm, W. P., Borge, G.F., Teas, G. \& Goldfarb, C. Dopamine-related tetrahydroisoquinolines: Significant urinary excretion by alcoholics after alcohol consumption. Science, 1979, 206, pp1184-1186.

Cooper, A. M., Sobell, M. B., Masito, S. A. 8 Sobell, L. C. Criterion intervals for pretreatment drinking measures in treatment outcome evaluation. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1980, 41, pp1186-1195.

Cooper, A. M., Sobell, M. B., Sobell, L. C. \& Maisto, S. A. Validity of alcoholics' self-reports: Duration data. International Journal of the Addictions, 1981, 16, pp401-406.

Coopersmith, S. Adaptive reactions of alcoholics and non-alcoholics. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1964, 25, pp262-278.

Costello, R. M. \& Baillargeon, J. G. Alcoholism Screening Inventory: Replication of Reich and extension. British Journal of Addiction, 1978, 73, pp399-406.

Cox, W. M. The alcoholic personality: A review of the evidence. Progress in Experimental Personality Research, 1979, 9, pp89-148.

Croft, D. J. Discriminant function analysis applied to laboratory tests in patients with hepatobiliary disease. Computers and Biomedical Research, 1972, 5, pp351-367.

Cronbach, L.J. Essentials of psychological testing. Harper and Row, New York, 1970.

Cronbach, L.J. \& Meehl, P.E. Construct validity in psychological tests. Psychological Bulletin, 1955, 52, pp281-302.

Davidson, D., Suppes, p. \& Siegel, S. Decision making: An experimental approach. Stanford, California: Stanford University Press, 1957.

Davies, P. Expectations and therapeutic practices in out-patient clinics for alcohol problems. British Journal of Addiction, 1981, 76, pp159-173.

De Blij, K., \& Hinrichsen, J. J. Construct validity of Rotter's locus of control scale in men alcoholics. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1980, 41, pp463-475.

De Groot, G. W. \& Adamson, J. D. Responses of psychiatric inpatients to the MacAndrew alcoholism scale. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1973, 34, pp1133-1139.

Distetano, M. K., Pryer, M. W. \& Garrison, J. L. Internal-external control among alcoholics. Journal of Clinical Psychology, 1972, 28, pp36-37.

Donovan, D.M. \& O'Leary, M. R. Comparison of perceived and experienced control among alcoholics and nonalcoholics. Journal of Ábnormal Psychology, 1975, 84, pp726-728.

Donovan, D. M. 8 $0^{\prime}$ Leary, M. R. Drinking-related locus of control scale: Reliability, factor structure and validity. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1978, 39, pp759-784.

Drum, D. E., Goldman, P.A. \& Janowski, C. B. Elevation of serum uric acid as a clue to alcohol use. Archives of Internal Medicine, 1981, 141, p477.

Eckardt, M. J., Ryback, R. S., Rawlings, R. R. \& Graubard, B. I. Biochemical diagnosis of alcoholism. A test of the discriminating capabilities of serum-gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase and mean corpuscular volume. Journal of the American Medical Assocition, 1981, 246, pp2707-2710.

Edwards, G. Epidemiology applied to alcoholism. A review and examination or purposes. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1973, 34, pp28-56.

Edwards, G. Drugs: Drug dependence and the concept of plasticity. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1974, 35, pp176-195.

Edwards, G. \& Gross, M. M. Alcohol dependence: Provisional description of a clinical syndrome. British Medical Journal, 1976, 1, pp1058-1061.

Edwards, G., Arif, A. B Hodgson, R. Nomenclature and classification of drug and alcohol-related problems: A shortened version of a kHO memorandum. British Journal of Addiction, 1982, 77, pp3-20.

Edwards, G., Hensman, C., Chandler, J. \& Peto, J. Motivation for drinking among men: Survey of a London suburb. Psycholoqical Medicine, 1973, 2, pp260-271.

Edwards, G., Chandler, J. \& Hensman, C. Drinking in a London suburb. 1: Correlates of normal drinking. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, Supplement, 1972, 6, pp69-93.

Ellis, G., Horthy, E. \& Goldberg, D. M. Further experience with computer assisted diagnosis of diseases of the liver and biliary tree. Clinical Chemistry, 1980, 26, pp1266-1271.

Elvy, G.A. A corrected translation in the development of the Munich Alcoholism Test (MALT). (Unpublished). University of Canterbury and Christchurch Hospital, New Zealand, 1981.

Elvy, G.A. \& Hells, 3. E. The Canterbury Alcoholism Screening Test (CAST): a detection instrument for use with hospitalised patients. New Zealand Medical Journal, 1984, 97, pp111-115.

English, G.E. \& Curtin, M. E. Personality differences in patients at three alcoholism treatment agencies. Journal of studies on Alcohol, 1975, 36, pp52-61.

Eschwege, E., Papoz, L., \& Lellouch, J. Blood cells and alcohol consumption with special reference to smoking habits. Journal of Clinical Pathology, 1978, 31, pp654-658.

Evenson, R.C., Altman, H., Hon Cho, D. \& Montgomery, J. Development of an alcoholism severity scale via an iterative computer program for item analysis. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1973, 34, pp1336-1341.

Ewing, J. A. \& Rouse, B. A. Identifying the hidden alcoholic. Paper read at the $29 t h$ International Congress on Alcoholism and Drug Dependence, 1970.

Fagan, R. W. \& Fagan, N. M. The impact of legal coercion on the treatment of alcoholism. Journal of Comparative Psychology, 1966, 15, pp357-361.

Favazza, A.R. \& Cannell, B. Screening for alcoholism among college students. American Journal of Psychiatry, 1977, 134. pp1414-1416.

Eavazza, A. R. Pires, J. The Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test: Application in a general military hospital. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1974, 35, pp925-929.

Feuerlein, W., Ringer, C., Kufner, H. \& Antons, K. Diagnose des alkoholismus der Munchner Alkoholismust Test (MALT). Munchne Medische Hochenschur. , 1977, 119, pp1275-1282.

Feuerlein, H., Ringer, $^{\text {C., Kufer, }} \mathrm{H}$. Atons, K. Diagnosis of alcoholism: The Munich Alcoholism Test (MALT). Currents in Alcoholism, 1980, 3, pp137-147.

Fillmore, $K$. Drinking and problem drinking in early adulthood and middle age. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1974, 35, pp819-840.

Fink, R. Modification of alcoholic beverage choice in social and non-social situations. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1965, 26, pp80-94.

Franks, C. M. Alcoholism. In C. G. Costello (Ed), Symptoms of psychopatholoqy. New York: Wiley, 1970.

Freer, D.E. \& Statland, B.E. The effects of ethanol (0.75 g/kg body weight) on the activities of selected enqymes in sera of healthy young adults: Intermediate-term effects. Clinical Chemistry, 1977, 23, pp830-834.

Freinkel, N., Arky, R.A. \& Singer, D. L. Alcohol hypoglycemia: IV. Current concepts of its pathogenesis. Diabetes, 1965, 14, pp350-356.

Friedrich, W. N. \& Loftsgard, S. o. Comparison of two alcoholism scales with alcoholics and their wives. Journal of Clinical Psychology, 1978, 34, pp784-786.

Friedrich, W. N. \& Loftsgard, S. O. A comparison of the MacAndrew alcoholism scale and the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test in a sample of problem drinkers. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1978, 39, pp1940-1944.

Funkhouser, M. J. Identifying alcohol problems among elderly hospital patients. Alcohol Health and Research Horld, 1978, 2, pp27-34.

Gabrynowicz, J. K. \& Moore, A. W. Rapid diagnosis of alcoholism among drunken drivers. Australian Family Physician, 1981, 10, pp893-898.

Gerard, D.L. \& Saenger, G. Outpatient treatment of alcoholism, Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1966.

Goldstein, S. G. \& Linden, J. D. Multivariate classification of alcoholics by means of the MMPI. Journal of Abnormal Psycholoqy, 1969, 74, pp661-669.

Goodwin, D. W. Blackouts and alcohol-induced memory dysfunction. In Mello and Mendelson (Eds). Decent advances in studies of alcoholism. United States Government Printing office, Washington D.C., 1971.

Goodwin, D.W., Davis, D. H. \& Robins, L. N. Drinking amid abundant illicit drugs: The Vietnam case. Archives of General Psychiatry, 1975, 32, pp230-233.

Goss, A, \& Morosko, T. E. Alcoholism and clinical symptoms. Journal of Abnormal Psychology, 1969, 74, pp682-684.

Goss, A. \& Morosko, T. E. Relation between a dimension of internal-external control and the MMPI with an alcoholic population. Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psycholoqy, 1970, 34, pp189-192.

Gough, H. G. Manual for the California psychological inventory. Palo Alto, California: Consulting psychologists press, 1957.

Gulliksen, H. Theory of mental tests. New York: Hiley, 1950.
Guze, S.B., Tuason, V.B., Stewart, M, A. \& Picken, B. The drinking history: A comparison of reports by subjects and their relatives, Quartlery Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1963, 24, pp249-260.

Hamlyn, A.N., Brown, A.J., Sherlock, S. \& Baron, D.N. Causal blood ethanol estimations in patients with chronic liver disease. Lancet, 1975, 2, pp345-347.

Hampton, p. J. The development of a personality questionnaire for drinkers. Genetic Psychology Monographs, 1953, 48, pp53-115.

Hase, H. D. 8. Goldberg, L. R. Comparative validity of dirferent strategies of constructing personality inventory scales. Psycholoqical Bulletin, 1967, 67, pp231-248.

Havinghurst, R.J. \& Neugarten, B. L. American Indian and white children: A sociopsychological investigation. Chicago: University of Chicago press, 1955.

Hays, R. \& Stacy, A. Validity of Five MMPI alcoholism scales: A critique and reanalysis. Journal of Clinical psychology, 1983, 39, pp459-460.

Heather, N., Edwards, S. \& More, B. D. Changes in construing nd outcome of group therapy for alcoholism. Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1975, 36, pp1238-1253.

Hed, R., Nygren, A. \& Sunblad, L. Muscle and liver serum enzyme activities in healthy volunteers given alcohol on a diet poor in carbohydrate. Acta Medica Scandinavia, 1972, 191, pp529-534.

Herrington, R.E., Jackobson, G.R., Daley, M. E., Lipo, R.F., Biller, H. B. \& Heissgerber, C. Use of plasma amino-n-butyric acid: Leucine ratio to identify alcoholics; an unsuccesseul test. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1981, 42, pp492-499.

Hewitt, C.C. A personality study of alcoholic addiction.
Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1943, 48, pp368-386.

Hill, H.E., Haertzen, C.A. \& Davis, H. An MMPI factor analytic study of alcoholics, narcotic addicts, and criminals. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1962, 23, pp411-431.

Hill, M. A. \& Blane, H. T. Evaluation of psychotherapy with alcoholics. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1967, 28, pp76-104.

Hilton, M. R. \& Lokare, V.G. The evaluation of a questionnaire measuring severity of alcohol dependence. British Journal of Psychiatry, 1978, 132, pp42-48.

Hinrichsen, J.J. Locus of control orientation among alcoholics: Some empirical and conceptual issues. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1976, 37, pp908-916.

Hodgson, R.J. The alcohol dependence syndrome: A step in the wrong direction? A discussion of Stan Shaw's Critique. British Journal of Addiction, 1980, 75, pp255-263.

Hoffman, H., Loper, R. G. \& Kammeier, M. L. Identifying future alcoholics with MMPI alcoholism scales. Quarterly Journal Cor Studies on Alcohol, 1974, 35, pp490-498.

Holmes, C.B., Dungan, D.S. \& McLaughlin, T. P. Validity of five MMPI alcoholism scales. Journal of Clinical Psychology, 1982, 38, pp661-664.

Holmes, W. O. The development of an empirical MMPI scale for alcoholism, San Jose, California, 1953. (Doctoral thesis, San Jose State College).

Holt, S., Skinner, H. A. \& Israel, Y. Early identification of alcohol abuse: 2. Clinical and laboratory indicators. Canadian Medical Association Journal, 1981, 124, pp1279-1299.

Horner, F., Kellen, J. A., Kingstone, E., Majaraj, N. \& Malkin, A. Dynamic changes of serum gamma-glutamyl transferase in chronic alcoholism. Enzyme, 1979, 24, pp217-223.

Hoyt, D. P. \& Sedlacek, G. M. Difrerentiating alcoholics from normals and abnormals with the MMPI. Journal of Clinical Psychology, 1958, 14, pp69-74.

Hurlburt, G., Gade, E. \& Fuqua, D. Sex and race as factors on locus of control scores with an alcoholic population. psychological Reports, 1983, 52, pp517-518.

Jacobson, G. The alcoholisms: Detection diagnosis and assessment. Human Science Press, New York, 1976.

Jalazo, J., Steer, R.A. Fine, E. W. Use of breathalyzer scores in the evaluation of persons arrested for driving while intoxicated. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1978, 39, pp1304-1307.

Jandl, J. H. The anemia of liver disease: observations in its mechanism. Journal of Clinical Investigation, 1955, 34) pp390-404.

Jellinek, E. M. Phases of alcohol addiction. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1952, 13, pp673-684.

Jellinek, E. M. The disease concept of alcoholism. New Brunswick, New Jersey: Hillhouse Press, 1960.

Jessor, R., Graves, T.D., Hanson, R.C. B Jessor, S.L. Society, personality and deviant behaviour: A study of a tri-ethnic community. New York: Holt, Rinehart, Winston, 1968.

Justin, R. Use of routine breath alcohol tests in the diagnosis of alcoholism in a primary care practice. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1979, 40, pp145-147.

Kalin, R. Self-descriptions of college problem drinkers. In D. C. McClelland, W. N. Davis, R. Kalin, and E. Wanner (Eds). The drinking man. New York: Free Press, 1972.

Kaplan, H. B., Kanas, T., Pokorny, A. D. \& Lively, G. Screening tests and self-identification in the detection of alcoholism. Journal of Health and Social Behaviour, 1974, 15, pp51-56.

Kaplan, H. B., Pokorny, A.D., Kanas, T. \& Lively, G. Self-identification and the underdetection of alcoholism. Diseases of the Nervous System, 1975, 36, pp133-136.

Keil, T.J., Usui, W.M. \& Busch, J.A. Repeat admissions for perceived problem drinking. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1983, 44, pp95-108.

Keller, M. A lexicon or disablements related to alcohol consumption. In G. Edwards, M. M. Gross, M. Keller, J. Moser \& R. Room, Alcohol-related disabilities. HHO offset Publication, WHO, Geneva, 1977, 32, pp23-60.

Keller, M. The definition of alcoholism and the estimation of its prevalence. In D.J. Pittman \& C. R. Snyder (Eds). Society. culture, and drinking patterns. New York: Wiley, 1962, pp310-329.

Keller, M. \& McCormick, M. A dictionery of words about alcohol. New Brunswick, New Jersey. Rutgers Center for Alcohol Studies, 1968.

Relly, G. A. A theory of personality: The psychology of personal constructs. New York: Norton, 1955.

Kepner, E. Application of learning theory to the etiology and treatment of alcoholism. Quarterly Journal for studies on Alcohol, 1964, 25, pp279-291.

Rirsch, A.D., Newcomb, C. H. \& Cisin, I. H. An experimental study of sensitivity of survey techniques in measuring drinking practices. Social Research Group, Report no. 1, Washington D. C.: The George Washington University, 1965.

Knochel, J. P. The pathophysiology and clinical characteristics of severe hypophosphatemia. Annals of Internal Medicine, 1977, 137, pp203-205.

Knupfer, G. Epidemologic studies and control progress in alcoholism. V. The epidemiology of problem drinking. American Journal of Public Health, 1967, 57, pp973-986.

Knupfer, G., Fink, R., Clark, W. B. \& Goffman, A. S. Factors related to amount of drinking in an urban community. Drinking practices study, Report no. 6, Berkeley: State of California, Department of Public Health, 1963.

Kogan, N. \& Wallach, M. A. Risk taking: A study in cognition and personality. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1964.

Konttinen, A., Hartel, G. \& Louhija, A. Multiple serum enzyme analyses in chronic alcoholics. Acta Medica Scandinavia, 1970, 188, pp257-258.

Kranitz, L. Alcoholics, heroin addicts and nonaddicts: Comparisons on the MacAndrew alcoholism scale of the MMPI. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1972, 33, pp806-809.

Krech, D., Crutchfield, R.S. \& Ballachey, E. L. Individual in society. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1962.

Kristenson, H. \& Trell, E. Indicators of alcohol consumption: Comparisons between a questionnaire (MM-MAST), interview and serum-gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT) in a health study of middle-aged males. British Journal of Addiction, 1982, 7, pp297-304.

Kryszewski, A., Bardzik, I., Kilkowska, K., Vogel-pienkowska, M. \& Schmind, R. Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase activity in serum and liver in chronic alcoholism. Possible usefulness as a test of abstinence. Acta Medica Polona, 1977, 18, pp199-211.

Lacher, D., Berman, W., Grisell, J. L. \& Schooff, K. The MacAndrew alcoholism scale as a general measure of substance misuse. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1976, 37, pp1609-1615.

Lachman, $R$. The model in theory construction. Psycholoqical Review, 1960, 67, pp113-129.

Lamy, J., Baglin, M. C., Aron, E. \& Weill, J. Diminution de la gamma-glutamyltranspeptidase serique des cirrhotiques a la suit du serrage. Clinica Chimica Acta, 1975, 60, pp97-101.

Landfield, A.W. A movement interpretation of threat. Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology, 1954, 49, pp529-532.

Lelbach, W. K. Quantitative aspects of drinking in alcoholic liver

Lelbach, W. $K$. Quantitative aspects of drinking in alcoholic liver cirrhosis. In J.M. Khanna, Y. Israel, H. Kalant (Eds)
Alcoholic liver pathology. Addiction Research Foundation, Toronto, 1975, ppi-18.

Lemert, E.M. Social pathology. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1951.

Lewin, K. A dynamic theory of personality: Selected papers.
(D.K. Adams and K.E. Zener, Trans.). New York: McGraw-Hill, 1935.

Lewis, D.C. \& Gordon, A. J. Alcoholism and the general hospital. The Roger Williams programme. Bulletin of the New York Academy of Medicine, 1983, 59, pp181-197.

Lieber, C.S. Liver adaptation and injury in alcoholism. New England Journal of Medicine, 1973, 288, pp356-362.

Lieber, C.S., Spritz, N., \& De Carli, L. M. Role of dietary adipose and endogenously synthesized fatty acids in pathogenesis of alcoholic fatty liver. Journal of Clinical Investigation, 1966, 45, pp51-62.

Lieber, C.S., Jones, D. P., Losowski, M.S. \& Davidson, C.S. Intercelation of uric acid and ethanol metabolism in man. Journal of Clinical Investigation, 1962, 41, pp1863-1870.

Lieber, C.S., Shaw, S. \& Van Hacs, L. Alcoholism and alcoholic liver injury: New diagnostic and prognostic tests. Archives of pathology, 1978, 102, pp393-395.

Lindenbaum, J. \& Hargrove, R. L. Thrombocytopenia in alcoholics. Annals of Internal Medicine, 1968, 68, pp526-532.

Lindenbaum, J. \& Lieber, C. S. Hematological effects of alcohol in men in the absence of nutritional deficiency. New England Journal of Medicine, 1969, 281, pp333-335.

Loper, R. G., Kammeier, M. L. \& Hoffman, H. MMPI characteristics of college Ereshman males who later become alcoholics. Journal of Abnormal Psycholgoy, 1973, 82, pp159-162.

Lyons, J. P. \& Izadi, B. M. Computer-aided diagnosis of alcoholism. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1980, 41, pp448-455.

MacAndrew, C. The differentiation of male alcoholic outpatients from nonalcohol psychiatric outpatients by means of the MMPI. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1965, 26, pp238-246.

MacAndrew, C. \& Geertsma, R. H. A critique of alcoholism scales derived from the MMPI. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1964, 25, pp68-76.

Magruder-Habib, K., Harris, K. E. \& Fraker, G. G. Validation of the veterans alcoholism screening test. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1982, 43, pp910-926.

Maisto, S.A., Sobell, L. C. \& Sobell, M. B. Comparison of alcoholics self-reports of drinking behaviour with reports of collateral informants. Journal of Consulting \& Clinical Psychology, 1979, 47, pp106-112.

Manson, M. P. A psychometric differentiation of alcoholics from nonalcoholics. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1948, 9, pp175-206.

Manson, M. P. The ALCADD Test. Beverly Hills, California: Hestern Dsychological Service, 1949a.

Manson, M. P. A psychometric determination of alcoholic addiction. American Journal of Psychiatry, $1949 \mathrm{~b}, 106$, pp199-205.

Marcus, A. A comparison of opinions about alcoholism in four populations. Toronto: Addiction Research Foundation, 1963.

Margolis, M., Krystal, H. \& Siegel, S. Psychotherapy with alcoholic offenders. Quarterly Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1964, 35, pp196-209.

Marlatt, G. A. Craving for control, loss of control and relapse: A cognitive-behavioural analysis. In P. E. Nathan, G. A. Marlatt \& Loberg (Eds), Alcoholism: New directions in behavioural research and treatment. New York: Plenum Press, 1978.

Martini, J.L. \& Brook, R. C. Value comparisons between alcoholics, nonalcoholics and therapists. International Journal of the Addictions, 1978, 13, pp1169-1176.

Martuza, V.R. Applying norm-referenced and criterion-referenced measurement in education. Allyn and Bacon Inc., Boston, 1977.

Matross, R. \& Hines, M. Behavioural derinitions of problem drinking among college students. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1982, 43, pp702-713.

Mayrield, D., McLeod, G. \& Hall, P. The CAGE questionnaire: Validation of a new alcoholism screening instrument. American Journal of Psychiatry, 1974, 131, pp1121-1123.

McAuley, T., Longabaugh, R, \& Gross, H. Comparative effectiveness of self and family forms of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1972, 39, pp1622-1627.

McCall, K.E.L., Whiting, B., Moore, M. R. \& Goldberg, A. Correlation of ethanol concentrations in blood and saliva. Clinical Science, 1979, 56, pp283-286.

McClelland, D.C., Davis, W, N., Ralin, R. R Hanner, E. The drinking man: Alcohol and human motivation. New York: Free Press, 1972.

McCloskey, H. \& Schaar, J. H. Psychological dimensions of anomy. American Sociological Review, 1965,30, pp14-40.

McCrady, B. S., Paolino, T.J. Longabaugh, R. Correspondence between reports of problem drinkers and spouses on drinking behaviour and impairment. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1978, 39, pp1252-1257.

McFarland, W. \& Libre, E. P. Abnormal Leucocyte response in alcoholism. Annals of Internal Medicine, 1963, 59, pp865-877.

McIntosh, I.D. Alcohol-related disabilities in general hospital patients: A critical assessment of the evidence. International Journal of the Addictions, 1982, 17, pp609-639.

Mello, N. K. Behavioural studies of alcoholism. In B. Kissin \& $H$. Begleiter (Eds), The biology of alcoholism, Vol. 2, 1972, New York: Plenum Press.

Merry, 3. \& Marks, V. Plasma-hydrocortise response to ethanol in chronic alcoholics. Lancet, 1969, 1, pp921-923.

Messick, S. \& Ross, J. Measurement in personality and cognition. John Viley \& Sons Inc., 1962.

Midanik, L. The validity of self-reported alcohol consumption and alcohol problems: A literature review. British Journal of Addiction, 1982, 77, pp357-382.

Miller, W. R. Alcoholism scales and objective assessment methods: A review. Psychological Bulletin, 1976, 83, pp649-674.

Miller, H. R. Behavioural treatment of problem drinkers: A comparative outcome study of three controlled drinking therapies. Journal of Consulting and Clinical psychology, 1978, 46, pp74-86.

Miller, W. R. Motivation for treatment: A review with special emphasis on alcoholism. Psycholoqical Bulletin, 1985, 98, pp84-107.

Miller, W.R., Crawford, V.L. \& Taylor, C. A. Significant others as corroborative sources for problem drinkers. Addictive Behaviours, 1978, 4, pp67-70.

Mischel, $W$. Personality and assessment, New York: Hiley, 1968.

Mischel, W. Toward a cognitive social learning reconceptualization of personality. psycholoqical Review, 1973, 80, pp252-283.

Mistilis, S.D. \& Barr, G. Alcohol and the liver: 3. Laboratory aids in the detection of alcohol abuse. Medical Journal of Australia, 1981, 2, pp538-540.

Moore, R. \& Murphy, T. C. Denial of alcoholism as an obstacle to recovery. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1961, 22, pp497-509.

Moore, R. A. The diagnosis of alcoholism in a psychiatric hospital: A trial of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST). American Journal of Psychiatry, 1972, 128, pp1565-1569.

Moore, R.A. The prevalence of alcoholism in a community general hospital. American Journal of Psychiatry, 1971, 127, pp638-639.

Morin, J. \& Porte, P. Macroytose erythrocytaire chez les ethyliques. Nouv. Presse. Med., 1976, 5, p273.

Morse, R.M. \& Swenson, H. M. Spouse response to a self-administered alcoholism screening test. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1975, 36, pp400-405.

Mulford, H. A. Stages in the alcoholic process: Towards a cumulative, nonsequential index. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1977, 38, pp563-583.

Murphy, D. G. The revalidation of diagnostic tests for alcohol addiction. Journal of Consulting Psychology, 1956, 20, pp301-304.

Murray, R. Screening and early detection instruments for disabilities relating to alcohol consumption. In G. Edwards, M. M. Gross, M. Keller, J. Moser \& R. Room (Eds) Alcohol related disabilities. WHO offset publication no. 32. Geneva, World Health Organisation, 1977.

Myrhed, M. \& Bergstrom, K. Liver enzymes in alcohol-discardant twins. Acta Medica Scandinavia, 1976, 200, pp86-91.

National Council on Alcoholism, Criteria Committee. Criteria Sor the Diagnosis of alcoholism. American Journal of Psychiatry, 1972, 129, pp127-134.

National Advisory Committee on Alcoholism. Interim report to the Secretary of Health, Education and Helfare. Hashington D. C.: Government Printing Office, 1968.

Nie, H. N., Hull, C. H., Jenkins, J. G., Steinbrenner, K. \& Bent, D. SPSS. Statistical Package for the Social Sciences. McGraw-Hill, 1975.

Nikkila, E.A. \& Taskinen, M. R. Relation between H. D. L. cholestrol levels and triglyceride metabolism. Lancet, 1978, $\underline{2}$, p892.

Obitz, F. Normative data on locus of control in male alcoholics undergoing treatment. Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 1978, 46, pp379-380.

Orford, J. \& Hawker, A. Investigation of an alcoholism rehabilitation halfway house. 2. Complex question of client motivation. British Journal of Addiction, 1974,69 , pp315-323.

Orrego, H., Kalant, H., Israel, X., Blake, J., Medline, H., Rankin, J. G., Armstrong, A. \& Kapur, B. Effects of short term therapy with propylthiouracil in patients with alcoholio liver disease. Gastroenterology, 1979, 76, pp105-115.

Oziel, L.J. \& obitz, F. W. Control orientation in alcoholics related to extent of treatment. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1975, 36, pp158-161.

Oziel, L.J., Obitz, F. W. \& Keyson, M. General and specific perceived locus of control in alcoholics. psychological Reports, 1972, 30, pp957-958.

Papoz, L., Harnet, J., Pequignot, G., Eschwege, E., Claude, J. \& Schwartz, D. Alcohol consumption in a healthy population: Relationship to GGT and mean corpuscular volume. Journal of the American Medical Association, 1981, 245, pp1748-1751.
park, p. Developmental ordering of experiences in alcoholism. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1973, 34, pp473-488.

Pattison, E. M. The NCA diagnostic criteria: 10 years later. In R.E. Meyer et al. (eds) Evaluation of the alcoholic: Implications for research, theory and treatment. Washington D. C.: United States Government Printing office, 1981.

Pattison, E.M., Sobell, M. B. \& Sobell, L. C. Emerging concepts of alcohol dependence. Springer Publishing Company, New York, 1977.

Penn, R. \& Worthington, D. J. Is Serum-gamma-glutamyl-transferase a misleading test?. British Medical Journal, 1983, 286, pp531-535.

Penn, R., Horthington, D. J., Clarke, C.A. \& Whitfield, A. G. W. Gamma-glutamyl-transpeptidase and alcohol intake. Lancet, 1981, i, p894.

Peterson, B., Trell, E. \& Kristenson, H. Comparison of gamma-glutamyl transferase and questionnaire test as alcohol indicators in different risk groups. Alcohol dependence, 1983, 11, pp279-286.

Plant, M. A. Miller, T. I. Disguised and undisguised questionnaires compared: Two alternate approaches to drinking behaviour surveys. Social Psychiatry, 1977, 12, pp21-24.

Plaut, T.F. Alcohol problems: A report to the nation by the Co-operative Commision on the study of alcoholism. New York: Oxford University Press, 1967.

Pokorny, A.D., Miller, B.A. \& Kaplan, H. B. The brief MAST: A shortened version of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test. American Journal of Psychiatry, 1972, 129, pp342-345.

Polich, M.J. The validity of self-reports in alcoholism research. Addictive Behaviours, 1982, 2, pp123-132.

Pomerlau, o., Pertschuk, M. s Stinnett, J. A critical examination of some current assumptions in the treatment of alcoholism. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1976, 37, pp849-867.

Powell, L. W. Normal human iron storage and its relation to ethanol consumption. Australian Annals of Medicine, 1966, 15, pp110-114.

Raistrick, D., Dunbar, G. \& Davidson, R. Development of a questionnaire to measure alcohol dependence. British Journal of Addiction, 1983, 78, pp89-95.

Rankin, J. G. D., Orrego-Matte, H., Deschenes, J, Mediine, A. \& Eindlay, J.E. Alcoholic liver disease: The problem of diagnosis. Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research, 1978, 2, pp327-338.

Reich, T., Robins, L. N., Koodruff, R.A., Taibleson, M., Rich, C. \& Cunningham, L. Computer assisted derivation of a screening interview for alcoholism. Archives of General Psychiatry, 1975, 32, pp847-852.

Reyes, E. \& Miller, W. R. Serum gamma-glutamyltranspeptidase as a diagnostic aid in problem drinkers. Addictive Behaviours, 1980, 5, pp59-65.

Rhodes, R.J. The MacAndrew alcoholism scale: A replication. Journal of Clinical Psychology, 1969, 25, pp189-191.

Rice, G. H. The internalisation of attitudes among nurses at the Palo Alto-Stancord Hospital. Unpublished doctoral dissertation. Stanford University, 1965.

Rich, C.C. \& Davis, H. G. Concurrent validity of MMPI alcoholism scales. Journal of Clinical Psycholoqy, 1969, 25, pp425-426.

Ringer, C., Kufner, H., Antons, K. \& Feuerlein, W. The NCA criteria for the diagnosis of alcoholism: An empirical evaluation study. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1977, 38, pp1259-1273.

Robinson, D. The alcohologist's addiction; Some implications of having lost control over the disease concept of alcoholism. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1972, 33, pp1028-1042.

Robinson, D. From drinking to alcoholism: A sociological commentary. London: Wiley, 1976.

Rohan, H.P., Tatro, R.L. \& Rotman, S.R. MMPI changes in alcoholics during hospitalization Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1960, 21, pp253-266.

Rohsenow, J. K. \& ${ }^{\prime}$ Leary, M. R. Locus or control in alcoholic populations: A review. 1. Development, scales, and treatment. International Journal of the Addiction, 1978, 13, pp55-78.

Roizen, R. Barriers to alcoholism treatment. Unpublished paper for the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. ADM-281-76-0027. 1977.

Rollnick, $S$. Definitions of alcoholism among treatment personnel: A reportory grid study. International Journal of the Addiction, 1982, 17, pp1351-1362.

Rollnick, S. \& Heather, $N$. The application of Bandura's self-efficacy theory to abstinence-orientated alcoholism treatment. Addictive Behaviors, 1982, 7, pp243-250.

Rollnick, S. \& Heather, N. Psychological change among alcoholics during treatment. British Journal on Alcohol and Alcoholism, 1980, 15, pp118-128.

Roman, P. M. \& Trice, H. M. The sick role, labeling theory and the deviant drinker. International Journal of Social Psychiatry, 1968, 14, pp245-251.

Room, R. Survey versus sales data for the United States. Drinking and Drug Practices Surveyor, 1971, 3, pp15-16.

Rosalki, S. B. Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase. Advances in Clinical Chemistry, 1975, 17, pp53-107.

Rosalki, S.B. \& Rau, D. Serum gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase activity in alcoholism. Clinica Chimica Acta, 1972, 39, pp41-47.

Rosalki, S.B. \& Zilva, J.F. Serum-gamma-glutamyltransferase and alcoholism. Lancet, 1977, $\underline{2}$, pp1183-1184.

Rosen, A.C. A comparative study of alcoholics and psychiatric patients with the MMPI. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1960, 21, pp253-266.

Rosenberg, N. MMPI alcoholism scales. Journal of Clinical Psycholoqy, 1972, 28, pp515-522.

Ross, S. M. Fear, reinforcing activities and degree of alcoholism; A correlational analysis. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1973, 34, pp823-828.

Rotman, S.R. \& Vestre, $N$. The use of the MMPI in identirying problem drinkers among psychiatric hospital admissions. Journal of Clinical psychology, 1964, 20, pp526-530.

Rotter, J. B. Generalized expectancies for internal versus external control of reinforcement. Psychological Monographs, 1966, p80.

Rotter, J. B. Some problems and misconceptions related to the construct of internal versus external control of reinforcement. Journal of Consulting \& Clinical Psychology, 1975, 43, pp56-67.

Rotter, J. B., Chance, J. \& Phares, E.J. Applications of a social learning theory of personality. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1972.

Rubin, M. \& Shontz, F. C. Diagnostic prototypes and diagnostio processes of clinical psychologists. Journal of Consulting Psychology, 1960, 24, pp234-239.

Ruff, C.F., Ayers; J. \& Templer, D.I. Alcoholics and criminals' similarity of scores on the MacAndrew alcoholism scale. psycholoqical Reports, 1975, 36, pp921-922.

Ryback, R.S., Eckardt, M. J., Felsher, B. \& Rawlings, R.R. Biochemical and hematologic correlates of alcoholism and liver disease. Journal of the American Medical Association, 1982, 248, pp2261-2265.

Sarbin, T.R., Taft, R. \& Bailey, D. E. Clinical inference and cognitive theory. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1960.

Schaeffer, H. H., A cultural delusion of alcoholics. Psycholoqical Reports, 1971, 29, pp587-589.

Schwartz, M. F. \& Graham, J. R. Construct validity of the MacAndrew alcoholism scale. Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 1979, 47, pp1890-1095.

Selzer, M. L. The Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST): The quest for a new diagnostic instrument. American Journal of Psychiatry, 1971, 127, pp1653-1658.

Selzer, M.L. \& Chapman, M. Differential risk among alcoholic drivers. proceedings of the American Association of Automotive Medicine, 1971, 14, pp207-213.

Selzer, M.L., Gomberg, E.S. \& Nordhoff, J. A. Men and women's reponses to the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1979, 40, pp502-504.

Selzer, M.L., Vanosdall, E.E. \& Chapman, M. Alcoholismin a problem drinker group: A field trial of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST). Journal of Safety Research, 1971, 3, pp176-181.

Selzer, M. L, Vinokur, A. \& Van Rooijen, L. A self-administered Short Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (SMAST). Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1975, 36, pp117-126.

Shaw, S. A critique of the concept of the alcohol dependence syndrome. British Journal or Addiction, 1980, 74, pp339-348.

Shaw, S. \& Lieber, C.S. Increased hepatic production of alpha amino-n-butyric acid after chronic alcohol consumption in rats and baboons. Gastroenterology, 1980, 78, pp168-113.

Shaw, S. \& Lieber, C. S. The use of the plasma amino-n-butyric acid: Leucine ratio to identiry alcoholics: An unsuccessful

Shaw, S. \& Lieber, C. S. The use of the plasma amino-n-butyric acid: Leucine ratio to identify alcoholics: An unsuccessful test. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1982, 43, pp164-166.

Shaw, S., Warner, T.M., Borysow, M. F., Schmitz, R.E. \& Lieber, C. S. Detection of alcoholic relapse: Comparative diagnostic value of MCV, GGTP and AANB. Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research, 1979, 3, pp297-301.

Sher, P. P. Diagnostic effectiveness of biomedical liver-function tests, as evaluated by discriminant function analysis. Clinical Chemistry, 1977, 23, pp627-630.

Sherlock, S. Diseases of the liver and biliary system. Firth edition. Blackwell Sci. Publishers, Oxford, England, 1975.

Skinner, $H . A$. The drug abuse screening test. Addictive Behaviors, 1982, 7, pp363-371.

Skinner, H. A. Multivariate evaluation of the MAST. Journal or Studies on Alcohol, 1979, 40, pp831-844.

Skinner, H. A. B Allen, B. A. Alcohol dependence syndrome: Measurement and validation. Journal of Abnormal Psychology, 1982, 91, pp199-209.

Skinner, H. A., Holt, S., Allen, B.A. \& Haakonson, N. H. Correlation between medical and behavioural data in the assessment of alcoholism. Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research, 1980, 4, pp371-377.

Skinner, H. A., Holt, S. \& Israel, Y. Early identification of alcohol abuse: 1. Critical issues and psychosocial indicators for a composite index. Canadian Medical Association Journal, 1981, 124, pp1141-1152.

Skinner, H. A. \& Hen-Jenn, S. Reliability of alcohol use indices: The lifetime drinking history and the MAST. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1982, 43, pp1157-1170.

Skinner, T.J. \& Charalampous, K. D. Interpretive procedures entailed in using the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test. British Journal of Addiction, 1978, 73, pp117-121.

Sletten, I.W. \& Evenson, R. C. The Missouri automated standard system or psychiatry (SSOP): An overview. Computer Medicine Special Report, 1972.

Smith, J.A., Lonergan, E.T. \& Sterling, K. Spur-cell anemia. Hemolytic anemia with red cells resembling acanthocytes in alcoholic cirrhosis. New Enqland Journal of Medicine, 1964, 271, pp396-398.

Sobell, L. C. \& Sobell, M. B. Outpatient alcoholics give valid self-reports. Journal of Nervous and Mental Diseases, 1975, 161, pp32-42.

Sobell, L. C. \& Sobell, M. B. Validity of self-reports in three populations of alcoholics. Journal or Consulting and

Sobell, L. C. Sobell, M. B. Validity of self-reports in three populations of alcoholics. Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 1978, 46, pp901-907.

Sobell, L. C., Maisto, S.A., Sobell, M.B. \& Cooper, A. M. Reliability of alcohol abusers' self-reports of drinking behaviour. Behaviour Research Therapy, 1979, 17, pp157-160.

Sobell, L. C., Sobell, M. B. \& Christelman, W. C. The myth of one drink'. Behavior Research and Therapy, 1972, 10, pp119-123.

Sobell, M.B., Sobell, L.C. \& Samuels, F.H. Validity of self-reports of alcohol-related arrests by alcoholics. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1974, 35, pp276-280.

Sobell, M. B., Sobell, L. C. \& Vanderspek, R. Relationship among clinical judgement, self-report, and breath analysis measures of intoxication in alcoholics. Journal of Consulting \& Clinical psychology, 1979, 47, pp204-206.

Sonquist, J.N. \& Morgan, J. H. The detection of interaction effects. Michigan Survey Research Centre, University of Michigan, 1970.

Srole, L. Social integration and certain corollaries: An exploration study. American Socioloqical Review, 1956, 21, pp709-716.

Stacey, B. G. \& Elvy, G.A. Is alcohol consumption log-normally distributed among fourteen-to-seventeen year-olds? Psychological Reports, 1981, 48, pp995-1005.

Stafford, R.A. Alcoholics' perception of the internal-external locus of their drinking problem. Journal of studies on Alcohol, 1980, 41, pp300-309.

Stafford, R. A. Locus of drinking problems as perceived by alcoholics and treatment personnel. Journal of studies on Alcohol, 1982, 43, pp593-598.

Stendig-Lindberg, G. Hypomagnesaemia in alcohol encephalophathies. Acta Psychiatry Scandinavia, 1974, 50, pp465-466.

Sterne, M. D. \& Pittman, D. J. The concept of motivation: A source of institutional and professional blockage in the treatment of alcoholism. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1965, 26, pp41-57.

Stibler, H., Sydow, 0 , \& Borg, S. Quantitation of a qualitative change in transferrin heterogeneity in alcoholics. Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 1980, 6, pp11-12.

Stockwell, T., Hodgson, R., Edwards, G., Taylor, C. B Rankin, H. The development of a questionnaire to measure severity of alcohol dependence. British Journal of Addiction, 1979, 74, pp79-87.

Stockwell, T., Murphy, D. \& Hodgson, R. The severity of alcohol dependence questionnaire: Its use, reliability and validity. British Journal of Addiction, 1983, 78, pp145-155.

Straus, R. \& Bacon, S. D. Drinking in college. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1953, pp12-103.

Su, C. K. \& Patek, A. J. Dupuytren's contracture. Its association with alcoholism and cirrhosis. Archives of International Medicine, 1970, 126, pp278-281.

Summers, T. Validitiy of alcoholics' self-reported drinking history. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1970, 31. pp972-974.

Sutherland, E.H., Schroeder, H. G. \& Tordella, C. L. Personality traits and the alcoholic. A critique of existing studies. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1950, 11, pp546-561.

Syme, L. Personality characteristics and the alcoholic: A critique of current studies. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1957, 18, pp288-302.

Taber, M., Quay, H. C., Mark, J. \& Nealey, V. Disease ideology and mental health research. Social Problems, 1969, 16, pp349-357.

Tannenbaum, F. Crime and Community. New York: Columbia University Press, 1938.

Taylor, J.A. A personality scale of manifest anxiety. Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology, 1953, 48, pp285-290.

Trice, H. M. \& Wahl, J. R. A rank order analysis of the symptoms of alcoholism. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1958, 19, pp636-648.

Uecker, A. E. Differentiating male alcoholics from other psychiatric patients. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1970, 31, pp379-383.

Uecker, A.E., Kish, G.B. \& Ball, M. E. Differentiation of alcoholism from general psychopathology by means of two MMPI scales. Journal of Clinical Psychology, 1969, 25, pp287-289.

Unger, K. H. \& Johnson, D. Red blood cell mean corpuscular volume: A potential indicator of alcohol usage in a working population. American Journal of Medical Science, 1974, 267, pp281-289.

Vaillant, G. E. The natural history of alcoholism. Harvard University press, 1983.

Vaillant, G. E. Natural history of male psychological healeh: VII. Antecedants of alcoholism and "orality". American Journal of Psychiatry, 1980, 137, pp181-186.

Vailant, G.E. \& Milosky, E.S. Natural history of male alcoholism. IV. Paths to recovery. Archives of General Psychiatry, 1982, 39, pp127-133.

Vega, A. Cross-validation of four MMPI scales for alcoholism. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1971, 32, pp791-797.

Vogler, R.E., Compton, J.V. \& Weissbach, T.A. The referral problem in the rield of alcohol abuse. Journal of Comparative Psycholoqy, 1966, 15, pp357-361.

Walls, W. D. \& Losowsky, M. S. The hemostatic defect of liver disease. Gastroenterology, 1971, 6日, pp108-119.

Hard, D.A. A multivariate analysis of excessive alcohol use involving labeling and self-constructs. International Journal of the Addictions, 1979, 14, pp1031-1045.

Wechsler, H., Kasey, E.H., Thum, D. \& Demone, H. H. Alcohol level and home accidents. A study of emergency service patients. Public Health Reports, 1969, 84, pp1043-1050.

Westerman, M. P., Balcerzac, S. P. \& Heinle, E. W. Red cell lipids in Zieve's syndrome: Their relation to hemolysis and to red cell osmotic fragility. Journal of Laboratory and Clincal Medicine, 1968, 72, pp663-669.

Whisler, R. H. \& Cantor, J. M. The MacAndrew alcoholism scale: A cross validation in a domicilary setting. Journal of Clinical Psychology, 1966, 22, pp311-312.

Whitefield, J.B., Hensley, W.J., Bryden, D. \& Gallagher, H. Effects of age and sex on biochemical responses to drinking habits. Medical Journal of Australia, 4978, $\underline{2}$, pp629-632.

Whitehead, T. P., Clarke, C.A. \& Whitfield, A. G. W. Biochemical and haematological markers of alcohol intake. Lancet, 1978, 1. pp978-979.

Whitehead, T.P., Pankov, H. \& Clark, P. M. S. Gamma-glutamyltranspeptidase and alcohol problems. Lancet, 1981,. 1, p663.

Whitelock, P.R., Overall, J.E. \& Patrick, J. H. Personality patterns and alcohol abuse in a state hospital population. Journal of Abnormal Psychology, 1971, 78, pp9-16.

Whitfield, J. B., Hensley, W.J., Bryden, D. \& Gallagher, H. Some laboratory correlates of drinking habits. Annals of Clinical Biochemistry, 1978, 15, pp297-303.

Wilkins, R. H. The hidden alcoholic in general practice: A method of detection using a questionnaire. Elek Science, London, England, 1974.

Williams, A.F. The alcoholic personality. In B. Kissin and $H$. Begleiter (Eds) The biology of alcoholism, Vol. 4, Social aspects of alcoholism, New York: Plenum, 1976.

Williams, A.F., McCourt, W. F. \& Schneider, L. Personality self-descriptions of alcoholics and heavy drinkers. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1971, 32, pp310-317.

Wilson, G. T. Booze, beliefs and behaviour. In P.E. Nathan, G.A., Marlatt \& Loberg (Eds) Alcoholism: New directions in behavioural research and treatment. New York: Plenum Press, 1978.

Wilson, J.M. G. \& Jungner, G. The principles and practice of screening for disease. Public Health Papers, 1968, 34.

Hiseman, S. M. \& Spencer-peet, J. The effect of drinking pattersn on enzyme screening tests for alcoholism. Practitioner, 1977, 219, pp243-245.

Wishner, J. Reanalysis of "Impressions of personality". Psychological Review, 1960, 67, pp96-112.

Woodruff, R.A., Clayton, P.J., Cloninger, C.R. \& Guze, S.B. A brief method of screening for alcoholism. Diseases of the Nervous System, 1976, 37, pp434-435.

Worden, M. \& Rosellini, G. Problem drinking continuum: A tool for treatment, training and education. Journal of Alcohol and Druq Education, 1980, 2, pp39-43.

World Health Organisation Expert Committee on Mental Health, Alcoholism Subcommittee. Second Report. HHO Technical Report Series, 1952, 48.

World Health Organisation. International classification of diseases, Ninth revision conference. W. H. O., Geneva, 1977.

Wu, A., Chanarin, I. \& Levi, A. J. Macrocytosis of chronic alcoholism. Lancet, 1974, 1, pp829-831.

Yoder, R.D. \& Moore, R. A. Characteristics of convicted drunken drivers. Quarterly Journal for Studies on Alcohol, 1973, 34, pp927-936.

Zager, L. D. \& Megargee, E. I. Seven MMPI alcohol and drug abuse scales: An empirical investigation of their interrelations, convergent and discriminant validity, and degree of racial bias. Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 1981, 40, pp532-544.

Ziller, R.C. The social self, New York: Pergamon, 1973.
Ziller, R.C. \& Golding, L. H. The political personality. Proceedings of the American Psychological Association, 1969.

Zung, B. J. Psychometric properties of the MAST and two briefer versions. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1979, 40, pp845-859.

Zung, B.J. Unidimensionality of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test. British Journal of Addiction, 1980, 74, pp389-391.

Zung, B.J. Evaluation of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST) in assessing lifetime and recent problems. Journal of Clinical Psycholoqy, 1982, 38, pp425-439.

Zung, B.J. Factor structure of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test in a psychiatric outpatient population. Journal of Clinical psychology, 1980a, 36, pp1024-1030.

Zung, B. J. Factor structure of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1978, 39, pp56-67.

Zung, B.J. \& Charalampous, M. D. Item analysis of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test. Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 1975, 36, pp127-132.

Zung, B.J. \& Ross, M. Factor structure of the Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST) among acutely disturbed psychiatric patients. Journal of Clinical Psychology, 1980 , 36 , pp806-812.


[^0]:    Question numbers relate to the questionnaire, appendix $C$
    $N$ sampled $=1613$, Non-specificity $N=1497$, Sensitivity $N=116$
    3 Men $N$ sampled $=856$, Non-specificity $N=762$, Sensitivity $N=94$
    3 Women $N$ sampled $=746$, Non-specificity $N=724$, Sensitivity $N=22$

    * Question does not meet selection criteria of likelihood ratio $>1$ and sensitivity $>5 \%$

[^1]:    a significant at' 1 percent or less
    b significant at 5 percent or less
    c not significant at 10 percent or less
    1 order of entry (see Appendix f for questions)
    2 cumulative

